

## COLOR CODE REFERENCE:

Yellow highlight is text that has been added and agreed by TG, when resolving General and Editorial comments.

Yellow highlight with ~~strike through~~ is text that is being deleted based on TG agreement when resolving General and Editorial comments.

# Specification for Valves

API SPECIFICATION 6D

TWENTY-FIFTH EDITION, XXXX 202x

API MONOGRAM PROGRAM EFFECTIVE DATE: XXXX 202X

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---



AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

## Special Notes

API publications necessarily address problems of a general nature. With respect to specific circumstances, local, state, and federal laws and regulations should be reviewed.

Neither API nor any of API's employees, subcontractors, consultants, committees, or other assignees make any warranty or representation, either express or implied, with respect to the accuracy, completeness, or usefulness of the information contained herein, or assume any liability or responsibility for any use, or the results of such use, of any information or process disclosed in this publication. Neither API nor any of API's employees, subcontractors, consultants, or other assignees represent that use of this publication would not infringe upon privately owned rights.

API publications may be used by anyone desiring to do so. Every effort has been made by the Institute to assure the accuracy and reliability of the data contained in them; however, the Institute makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee in connection with this publication and hereby expressly disclaims any liability or responsibility for loss or damage resulting from its use or for the violation of any authorities having jurisdiction with which this publication may conflict.

API publications are published to facilitate the broad availability of proven, sound engineering and operating practices. These publications are not intended to obviate the need for applying sound engineering judgment regarding when and where these publications should be utilized. The formulation and publication of API publications is not intended in any way to inhibit anyone from using any other practices.

Any manufacturer marking equipment or materials in conformance with the marking requirements of an API standard is solely responsible for complying with all the applicable requirements of that standard. API does not represent, warrant, or guarantee that such products do in fact conform to the applicable API standard.

Users of this Specification should not rely exclusively on the information contained in this document. Sound business, scientific, engineering, and safety judgment should be used in employing the information contained herein.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced, translated, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior written permission from the publisher. Contact the Publisher, API Publishing Services, 200 Massachusetts Ave, NW, Washington, DC 20001.

Copyright © 2020 American Petroleum Institute

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

## Foreword

Nothing contained in any API publication is to be construed as granting any right, by implication or otherwise, for the manufacture, sale, or use of any method, apparatus, or product covered by letters patent. Neither should anything contained in the publication be construed as insuring anyone against liability for infringement of letters patent.

Shall: As used in a standard, “shall” denotes a minimum requirement in order to conform to the specification.

Should: As used in a standard, “should” denotes a recommendation or that which is advised but not required in order to conform to the specification.

May: As used in a standard, “may” denotes a course of action permissible within the limits of a standard.

Can: As used in a standard, “can” denotes a statement of possibility or capability.

This document was produced under API standardization procedures that ensure appropriate notification and participation in the developmental process and is designated as an API standard. Questions concerning the interpretation of the content of this publication or comments and questions concerning the procedures under which this publication was developed should be directed in writing to the Director of Standards, American Petroleum Institute, 200 Massachusetts Ave, Washington, DC 20001. Requests for permission to reproduce or translate all or any part of the material published herein should also be addressed to the director.

Generally, API standards are reviewed and revised, reaffirmed, or withdrawn at least every five years. A one-time extension of up to two years may be added to this review cycle. Status of the publication can be ascertained from the API Standards Department, telephone (202) 682-8000. A catalog of API publications and materials is published annually by API, 200 Massachusetts Ave, NW, Washington, DC 20001.

Suggested revisions are invited and should be submitted to the Standards Department, API, 200 Massachusetts Ave, NW, Washington, DC 20001, standards@api.org.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Committee Draft - Do Not Distribute

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

## Introduction

### Changes from the 24<sup>th</sup> to the 25<sup>th</sup> Edition

This specification is the result of updating the requirements from API Specification 6D, Twenty-fourth Edition, including Addendum 1 and Addendum 2. The revision of API 6D, Twenty-fifth Edition, is developed based on input from the API 6D Task Group technical experts globally. The technical revisions have been made to accommodate the needs of industry and address many interpretations to move this specification to a higher level of service to the petroleum and natural gas industry. Highlights of some of the significant changes between the 24<sup>th</sup> edition and 25<sup>th</sup> edition, include:

- Reorganizing the specification requirements in an order more aligned with the manufacturing process
- The addition of axial on/off and axial check valves to the types of valves covered by this specification
- The removal of Class 400 as a standard pressure class
- Requiring conformance to API 6DX for valves supplied with actuators
- Identifying allowable adjustments for sub-size impact specimens
- Identifying **heat treatment** minimum requirements ~~for heat treatment~~
- Identifying minimum bolting requirements
- Revising marking requirements
- Providing ~~new~~ **updated** design validation guidance
- Addition of requirements for repair and remanufacture of valves from API 6DR **in new Annex A**
- Collecting all purchaser-**specified** requirements into annexes (Annex K and Annex L)
- Combining QSL requirements from the 24<sup>th</sup> edition (Annexes I, J and L into one annex [Annex I])

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

## Units of measurement

In this standard, data are expressed in both U.S. customary (USC) and metric (SI) units.

## Rounding

Except as otherwise required by this specification, to determine conformance with the specified requirements, observed or calculated values are rounded to the nearest unit in the last right-hand place of figures used in expressing the limiting value, in conformance with the rounding method of ASTM E29 or ISO 80000-1, Annex B, Rule A.



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Contents API (to develop final content upon publication)

Committee Draft - Do Not Distribute

# Specification for Valves

## 1 Scope

This specification defines the requirements for the design, manufacturing, materials, welding, quality control, assembly, testing, marking, documentation and process controls of axial, ball, check, gate, plug valves for application in the petroleum and natural gas industries.

This specification applies to ASME Class 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500 and 2500.

NOTE ASME Class 400 has been removed from this specification.

This specification is not applicable to valves for pressure Class 400 and pressure ratings exceeding Class 2500.

API 6DR for repair and remanufacture of valves has been withdrawn and is replaced by Annex A.

Annexes A, B, D, E, and F are informative and contain optional requirements used in this specification.

Annexes C, G, H, I, J, K and L are normative and are mandatory in the use of this specification, when applicable.

Information marked "NOTE" are not requirements but are provided for guidance in understanding or clarifying the associated requirement.

## 2 Normative References

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies, except that new editions may be used on issue and shall become mandatory upon the effective date specified by the publisher or 6 months from the date of the revision (where no effective date is specified).

### API

API Standard 6DX, *Standard for Actuators and Mounting Kits for Valves*

API Specification 6FA, *Specification for Fire Test for Valves*

API Specification 20A, *Carbon Steel, Alloy Steel, Stainless Steel, and Nickel Base Alloy Castings for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition*

API Specification 20B, *Open Die Shaped Forgings for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry, 1<sup>st</sup> Edition*

API Specification 20C, *Closed Die Forgings for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry, 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition*

API Specification 20E, *Alloy and Carbon steel bolting for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industries, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition*

API Specification 20F, *Corrosion-Resistant Bolting for use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industries, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition*

API Standard 20G, *Qualification of Suppliers of Welding Services for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

~~API Standard 20J, Qualification of Distributors of Metallic Materials for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry~~

~~API Standard 20L, Qualification of Polymeric Seal Manufacturers for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry~~

API Standard 607, *Fire Test for Quarter-turn Valves and Valves Equipped with Nonmetallic Seats*

~~API Standard 624, Type Testing of Rising Stem Valves Equipped with Graphite Packing for Fugitive Emissions~~

~~API Standard 641, Type Testing of Quarter-turn Valves for Fugitive Emissions~~

## **ASME<sup>1</sup>**

ASME B1.1 B1.1, *Unified Inch Screw Threads (UN and UNR Thread Form)*

ASME B1.20.1, *Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)*

ASME B16.5, *Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fitting: NPS 1/2 through 24*

ASME B16.10, *Face-to-Face and End-to-End Dimensions of Valves*

ASME B16.25, *Buttwelding Ends*

ASME B16.34, *Valves, Flanged, Threaded, and Welding End*

ASME B16.47, *Large Diameter Steel Flanges: NPS 26 through NPS 60 Metric/Inch Standard*

ASME B31.4, *Pipeline Transportation Systems for Liquid Hydrocarbons and Other Liquids,*

ASME B31.8, *Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems*

ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (BPVC), Section II: *Materials, Part D: Properties*

ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (BPVC), Section V: *Nondestructive Examination*

ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (BPVC), Section VIII: *Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels; Division 1: Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels*

ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (BPVC), Section VIII: *Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels; Division 2: Alternative Rules*

ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (BPVC), Section IX: *Welding and Brazing Qualifications*

## **ASNT<sup>2</sup>**

---

<sup>1</sup> ASME International, 2 Park Avenue, New York, New York 10016-5990, [www.asme.org](http://www.asme.org).

<sup>2</sup> American Society for Nondestructive Testing, 1711 Arlingate Lane, P.O. Box 28518, Columbus, Ohio 43228, [www.asnt.org](http://www.asnt.org).

#### **ASNT ACCP-CP-1 A320-CP-1, ASNT Central Certification Program**

ASNT SNT-TC-1A, Recommended Practice No. SNT-TC-1A—Personnel Qualification and Certification in Non-Destructive Testing

### **ASTM<sup>3</sup>**

ASTM A320, *Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for Low-Temperature Service*

ASTM A370, *Standard Test Methods and Definitions for Mechanical Testing of Steel Products*

ASTM A488, *Standard Practice for Steel Castings, Welding, Qualifications of Procedures and Personnel*

ASTM A578A/A578M, *Standard Specification for Straight-Beam Ultrasonic Examination of Rolled Steel Plates for Special Applications*

ASTM A609/A609M, *Standard Practice for Castings, Carbon, Low-Alloy, and Martensitic Stainless Steel, Ultrasonic Examination Thereof*

ASTM A962, *Standard Specification for Common Requirements for Steel Fasteners or Fastener Materials, or Both, Intended for Use at Any Temperature from Cryogenic to the Creep Range*

ASTM E10, *Standard Test Method for Brinell Hardness of Metallic Materials*

ASTM E18, *Standard Test Methods for Rockwell Hardness of Metallic Materials*

ASTM E110, *Standard Test Method for Rockwell and Brinell Hardness of Metallic Materials by Portable Hardness Testers*

### **EN**

**EN 12516-1, Industrial valves—Shell design strength—Part 1: Tabulation method for steel valve shells**

**EN 12516-2, Industrial valves—Shell design strength—Part 2: Calculation method for steel valve shells**

**EN 13445-3, Unfired pressure vessels—Part 1: General**

### **ISO<sup>4</sup>**

ISO 148-1, *Metallic materials—Charpy pendulum impact test—Part 1: Test method*

ISO 3601-2, *Fluid power systems—O-rings—Part 2: Housing dimensions for general applications*

---

<sup>3</sup> ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania 19428, [www.astm.org](http://www.astm.org).

<sup>4</sup> International Organization for Standardization, 1, ch. de la Voie-Creuse, Case postale 56, CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland, [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).

ISO 3601-3, *Fluid power systems—O-rings—Part 3: Quality acceptance criteria*

ISO 5208, *Industrial valves—Pressure testing of valves*

ISO 9606-1, *Approval testing of welders—Fusion welding—Part 1: Steels*

ISO 9712, *Non-destructive testing—Qualification and certification of personnel*

**ISO 10497, *Testing of valves— Fire type-testing requirements***

ISO 14732, *Welding personnel — Qualification testing of welding operators and weld setters for mechanized and automatic welding of metallic materials*

ISO 15607, *Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials—General rules*

ISO 15848-1, *Industrial valves—Measurement, test and qualification procedures for fugitive emissions—Part 1: Classification system and qualification procedures for type testing of valves*

ISO 15848-2, *Industrial valves—Measurement, test and qualification procedures for fugitive emissions—Part 2: Production acceptance test of valves*

ISO TR 15608, *Welding—Guidelines for a Metallic Materials Grouping System*

ISO 15609 (all parts), *Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials—Welding procedure specification*

ISO 15614-1, *Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials—Welding procedure test— Part 1: Arc and gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys*

ISO 15614-7, *Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials—Welding procedure test— Part 7: Overlay welding*

## **MSS<sup>5</sup>**

**MSS SP-25, *Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges, and Unions***

MSS SP-44, *Steel Pipeline Flanges*

MSS SP-55, *Quality Standard for Steel Castings for Valves, Flanges and Fittings and Other Piping Components—Visual Method for Evaluation of Surface Irregularities*

## **NACE<sup>6</sup>**

NACE MR0175/ISO15156 (all parts), *Petroleum and natural gas industries—Materials for use in H<sub>2</sub>S-containing environments in oil and gas production*

---

<sup>5</sup> Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc., 127 Park Street, NE, Vienna, Virginia 22180- 4602, [www.mss-hq.com](http://www.mss-hq.com).

<sup>6</sup> NACE International (formerly the National Association of Corrosion Engineers), 1440 South Creek Drive, Houston, Texas 77084-4906, [www.nace.org](http://www.nace.org).

## SAE<sup>7</sup>

SAE AMS-H-6875, Heat Treatment of Steel Raw Materials

SAE AMS2750F E2750 E-2012, Pyrometry

## 3 Terms, Definitions, Acronyms, Abbreviations, Symbols, and Units

### 3.1 Terms and Definitions

For the purposes of this document, the following definitions apply.

#### **assembly**

Association of multiple parts/components into a finished product, including as a minimum, installation of all pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts needed to ensure conformance to applicable pressure testing requirements.

#### **axial valve**

Valve with a cylindrical closure member that moves on an axis parallel to the direction of flow.

NOTE See Figure B.1 for a representative configuration for an axial on-off valve (provided for illustration purposes only).

#### **bidirectional seat**

Valve seat designed to seal against pressure source in either direction.

#### **bidirectional valve**

Valve designed for blocking the flow from either the upstream or the downstream direction in either direction.

#### **bleed (verb)**

To drain or vent.

#### **block and bleed valve**

##### **BB**

Valve with at least one seating surface that, in the closed position, provides a seal against pressure from one end of the valve with the body vented other end depressurized.

#### **block valve**

Axial, check, ball, gate or plug valve that blocks flow when in the closed position.

---

<sup>7</sup> SAE Headquarters, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA 15096

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

NOTE Valves may be either single seated or double seated or either bidirectional or unidirectional.

**breakaway thrust**

**breakaway torque**

Maximum thrust or torque required to operate a valve at maximum pressure differential

**by agreement**

Required **understanding agreement** attained between the manufacturer and the purchaser needed for a given action to be completed.

NOTE ~~If agreement is not reached, the associated action cannot be completed.~~

**casting (noun)**

Object at or near finished shape obtained by solidification of a fluid substance in a mold.

NOTE **Objects made by hot isostatic pressing are not castings.** ~~Components made by hot isostatic pressing may not be identified as castings~~

**closure member**

Part of a valve, such as a ball, clapper, disc, gate, **piston** or plug, positioned in the flow stream to permit or prevent flow.

NOTE Earlier editions of API 6D referred to this as an "obturator".

**3.1.xx**

**date of manufacture**

**Date of completion of factory acceptance testing.**

**design review and verification**

Process of examining the result of design and development output to determine conformity with specified requirements.

NOTE Design verification activities can include one or more of the following (this is not an all-inclusive list):

- a) confirming the accuracy of design results through the performance of alternative calculations,
- b) review of design output documents independent of activities of design and development,
- c) comparing new designs to similar proven designs.

**design validation**

Process of proving a design by testing to demonstrate conformity of the product to design requirements.

NOTE Design validation can include one or more of the following (this is not an all-inclusive list):

- a) prototype tests,
- b) functional and/or operational tests of production products,

- c) tests specified by industry standards and/or regulatory requirements,
- d) field performance tests and reviews.

### **double block and bleed valve**

#### **DBB**

Valve with two or more seating surfaces that, in the closed position, provides a seal against pressure from both ends of the valve with a means of venting/bleeding the cavity between the seating surfaces.

**NOTE** This valve does not provide positive double isolation when only one side is under pressure (see 3.1.15)

### **double isolation and bleed valve**

#### **DIB**

Valve with two or more seating surfaces, each of which, in the closed position, provides a seal against pressure from a single source, with a means of venting/bleeding the cavity between the seating surfaces.

**NOTE** This feature can be provided in one direction or in both directions.

### **downstream**

Opposite side of upstream.—Side of the valve where there would be no pressure or a lower pressure.

**NOTE** 1 Where the valve is bidirectional, this reference may change sides.

**NOTE** 2 The term does not refer to flow direction.

### **drive train**

All parts of a valve drive between the operator (but not including the operator) and the closure member (including the closure member connection to the drive train) that transmit or react to loads.

3.1.xx

### **ductile material**

Material that fractured after achieving more than 0.5% extension of the gauge length when loaded in tension.

### **flow coefficient**

#### **C<sub>v</sub>**

Volumetric flow rate of water at a temperature between 40 °F (5 °C) and 104 °F (40 °C) passing through a valve and resulting in a pressure loss of 14.5 psi (0.1 MPa; 1 bar).

**NOTE** K<sub>v</sub> is related to the flow coefficient C<sub>v</sub>, expressed in USC units of U.S. gallons per minute at 60 °F (15.6 °C) resulting in a 1 psi pressure drop as given by Equation (1):

$$K_v = C_v / 1.156 \quad (1)$$

### **hand-wheel**



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Wheel used to manually operate a valve requiring **multiple turns turning and** consisting of a rim connected to a hub (for example, by spokes).

#### **locking device**

Part or an arrangement of parts for securing a valve in the open and/or closed position.

#### **major weld repair**

Any cavity prepared for repair welding that exceeds 20% of the part wall thickness or 1 in. depth, whichever is smaller or on the surface areas greater than 10 in.<sup>2</sup> (64.5 cm<sup>2</sup>) or a through wall leak during any pressure testing.

#### **manufacturer**

Organization that satisfies the requirements of this specification **for activities that cannot be outsourced** (3.1.29).

NOTE See 4.6.1 for activities that may be outsourced.

#### **maximum allowable operating working pressure**

##### **MAOP MAWP**

Maximum pressure at which the valve is permitted to operate, at a **specified corresponding** temperature, as defined by ASME B16.34 **Table 2**.

NOTE Pressure-temperature ratings are the maximum allowable working pressure for the corresponding temperature.

#### **maximum allowable stem torque/thrust**

##### **MAST**

Maximum torque/thrust that can be applied to the valve drive train without **risk of** damage, as defined by the valve manufacturer.

#### **maximum pressure differential**

##### **MPD**

Maximum difference between the upstream and downstream pressure across the closure member at which the closure member may be operated.

#### **3.1.xx**

#### **non-ductile material**

Material that fractures at or below 0.5 % extension of the gauge length when loaded in tension.

#### **nominal [diameter] size**

##### **DN**

Numerical designation of size (in millimeters) that is common to components in piping systems.

#### **nominal pipe size**

## **NPS**

Numerical designation of size (in inches) that is common to components in piping systems.

## **operator**

Device (or assembly) for opening or closing a valve that includes an actuator, gearbox, and direct drive devices.

NOTE 1 A manual operator can be a wrench (lever) or hand-wheel with or without a gearbox.

NOTE 2 An A powered operator can be an electric, hydraulic, or gas device bolted or otherwise attached to the valve for powered opening and closing of the valve.

## **outsourced**

Function, activity, or process that is performed by an external supplier on behalf of the manufacturer.

## **packing gland**

Components used to compress/retain the stem packing.

## **piggability**

Capability of a valve to permit the unrestricted passage of a pig PIG (pipeline inspection gauge).

## **pipe pup transition piece**

Pipe or forged material that is welded to the valve

Piece(s) of pipe or forged material, welded to the finished valve body to prevent valve-seal damage from girth welding and/or matching of valve material to pipeline strength properties, or to provide a valve end matching the pipeline dimensions.

NOTE Pipe pups may be used to prevent valve seal damage from girth welding or matching of valve material to pipeline strength properties, or to provide a valve end matching the pipeline dimensions.

## **position indicator**

Device to show the position of the valve closure member.

## **pressure balance hole**

Hole in the closure member that provides pressure balance between the valve bore and valve cavity only when in the open position. avoid the cavity pressure being lower different than the flow bore.

NOTE The hole does not provide relief of cavity over-pressure in closed position.

## **pressure-boundary bolting**

Threaded fastener used to assemble pressure-containing parts.

EXAMPLE Pressure-boundary bolting can include studs, nuts, bolts, and cap screws.

### **pressure class**

Numerical designation as defined in ASME Standard B16.34, which also defines the pressure and temperature rating for the end connector material of the valve.

NOTE The ASME rating class (pressure rating designation) is the word "Class," followed by a dimensionless number (the designation for pressure–temperature ratings), for example: Class 150, Class 300, etc.

### **pressure-containing parts**

Parts identified in 5.1.2 whose failure to function as intended results in a release of contained fluid into the environment.

NOTE Pressure-containing parts do not include bolting (see Section 8).

### **pressure-controlling parts**

Parts identified in 5.1.3 intended to allow or prevent the flow of fluids.

### **3.1.xx**

### **purchaser**

Organization that buys equipment from the manufacturer.

### **receiving verification**

Inward goods that are received at the manufacturer and identified as in conformance with the manufacturer's purchase order requirements.

### **remanufacturer**

Organization performing disassembly, reassembly, and testing of a valve with or without replacement of parts that includes machining, welding, heat-treating, and/or other manufacturing operations, to maintain conformance to this specification.

NOTE Replacement of the body is not permitted.

### **repairer**

Organization performing disassembly, reassembly, and testing of a valve with or without replacement of parts that does not include machining, welding, and heat-treating, other manufacturing operations, or replacement of bodies to maintain conformance to this specification.

NOTE Repair processes can include buffing, polishing, deburring, and other minimal removal processes.

### **sealing surface**

Contact surface of dynamic or static seals within the valve shell, excluding end connector sealing surfaces that mate with other equipment.

EXAMPLE Sealing surface examples include the stem, seat, cover/bonnet seals and backseat.

### **seating surfaces**

Contact surfaces of the closure member and seat that ensure valve sealing.

NOTE The seat may be integral to the valve body.

**self-relieving seat**

Valve seat designed to relieve pressure ~~in from~~ the valve cavity.

NOTE Depending upon valve type, the pressure may be relieved to the pressure source or the low-pressure side.

**shaft**

Part that supports the closure member on a check valve and may or may not pass through the pressure boundary.

**shell test**

Test of the assembled pressure-containing parts.

**stem**

Part that drives the closure member and passes through the pressure boundary.

**stem extension assembly**

Non-pressure-containing assembly consisting of the stem extension and the stem extension housing.

**~~temperature, maximum operating~~ temperature, maximum allowable**

Upper temperature limit for ~~valve product~~ continuous operating service conditions.

NOTE 1 The maximum operating temperature may be limited by pressure.

NOTE 2 Pressure-temperature ratings are the maximum allowable working pressure for the corresponding temperature.

**temperature, minimum allowable operating**

Lower temperature limit for ~~valve product~~ continuous operating service conditions.

NOTE The minimum operating temperature may be limited by pressure.

**through-conduit valve**

Valve with an unobstructed and continuous cylindrical opening.

**unidirectional seat**

Valve seat designed to seal the pressure source in one direction only.

**unidirectional valve**

Valve designed for blocking the flow in one direction only.

#### **unless otherwise agreed**

Allowable modification of the requirements of this specification when the manufacturer and purchaser are in agreement.

Provision to permit modification of a requirement of this specification, only where the requirement includes this term and only when the manufacturer and purchaser are in agreement regarding the modification.

NOTE Modification of the requirements of this specification is permitted **only** for those clauses that include this term. If no modification agreement is identified between the manufacturer and purchaser, then the applicable clause is satisfied as stated.

#### **upstream**

Side of the valve closer to the source of pressure where the pressure is retained.

NOTE 1 Where the valve is bidirectional, this reference may change sides.

NOTE 2 The term does not refer to flow direction.

#### **visible leakage**

Leakage of test fluid observed during a pressure test, either through direct observation or with the use of video equipment.

Leakage of test fluid observed by any visual method during a pressure test.

NOTE Leakage may be observed through or past a pressure boundary or at an interface.

### **3.2 Acronyms and Abbreviations**

For the purposes of this document, the following acronyms and abbreviations apply.

**AWP** — ambient working pressure

ACCP	ASNT Central Certification Program
API	American Petroleum Institute
ASNT	American Society for Nondestructive Testing
ASME	American Society for Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
AWS	American Welding Society
BB	block and bleed
BM	base metal
BPVC	boiler and pressure vessel code
BSL	bolting specification level

BTC	break-to-close
BTO	break-to-open
CE	carbon equivalent
DBB	double block and bleed
DIB	double isolation and bleed
DN	nominal size
DPE	double piston effect
ETC	end-to-close
ETO	end-to-open
HAZ	heat-affected zone
HBW	Brinell hardness, tungsten ball indenter
HRC	Rockwell C hardness
ID	Inner/Inside Diameter
ISO	International Standards Organization
<del>MAOP</del>	<del>maximum allowable operating pressure</del>
MAWP	maximum allowable working pressure
MAST	maximum allowable stem torque/thrust
MPD	maximum pressure differential
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society
MT	magnetic-particle testing
NDE	nondestructive examination
NACE	National Association of Corrosion Engineers
NORM	Naturally Occurring Radioactive Material
NPS	nominal pipe size
OD	Outer/Outside Diameter
OEM	original equipment manufacturer
PIG	pipeline inspection gauge

PMI	positive material identification
PQR	(weld) procedure qualification record
PT	penetrant testing
PWHT	post-weld heat treatment
QSL	quality specification level
RGD	Rapid Gas Decompression
RT	radiographic testing
RTC	run-to-close
RTO	run-to-open
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SDS	Safety Data Sheet
SMYS	specified minimum yield strength
SPE	single piston effect
SWL	safe working limit
TC	test coupon
TDI	total dial indicator
TPI	Threads per inch
TUS	thermal uniformity survey
UNC	Unified National Coarse
UT	ultrasonic testing
VT	visual testing
WM	weld metal
WPS	weld procedure specification
WPQ	welder performance qualification

### 3.3 Symbols and Units

For the purposes of this document, the following symbols and units apply.

$C_v$  flow coefficient in USC units

$K_v$  flow coefficient in metric units

ppm part per million (mass)

$S_m$  design stress intensity value

$S_y$  [specified minimum] yield strength

$t$  thickness

$V$  volts, direct current

$\Omega$  Ohms

## **4 APPLICATION, CONFIGURATION and PERFORMANCE**

### **4.1 Valve Types**

#### **General**

This Specification shall apply to the following:

- axial valves
- ball valves
- check valves
- gate valves
- plug valves

NOTE The nomenclature used in this Specification for typical equipment is shown in Figure B.1 thru B.15.

Valves having a preferred flow direction for operation shall be marked per Table 12.

#### **Axial Valves**

Axial valves shall have a cylindrical closure member that moves on an axis parallel to the direction of flow.

NOTE A typical configuration for axial valves with flanged or welding ends is shown, for illustration purposes only, in Figure B.1.

#### **Ball Valves**

Ball valve shall have a solid, one-piece closure member which rotates on an axis perpendicular to the direction of flow.

Ball valves shall be of solid one-piece spherical construction with a closure member that rotates on an axis perpendicular to the direction of flow.

NOTE Typical configurations for ball valves with flanged or welding ends are shown, for illustration purposes only, in Figure B.2, Figure B.3, Figure B.4, and Figure B.5.



## Check Valves

Check valves shall have a closure member that responds automatically to block fluid in one direction and to permit fluid flow in the opposite direction.

NOTE 1 Typical configuration for check valves are shown, for illustration purposes only, in Figure B.6, Figure B.7, Figure B.8, Figure B.9, Figure B.10, Figure B.11 and Figure B.12.

NOTE 2 Check valves can be of the wafer, axial flow, and lift type.

NOTE 2.3 Check valves may be supplied with an lock-open facility which would prevent the automatic blocking of fluid flow.

## Gate Valves

Gate valves shall have a closure member that moves in a plane perpendicular to the direction of flow.

NOTE 1 The closure member can be constructed of one piece (slab-gate valve) or of two or more pieces (expanding-gate valve).

Gate valves shall be provided with a backseat or secondary stem sealing feature in addition to the primary stem seal.

NOTE 2 Typical configurations for gate valves with flanged and welding ends are shown, for illustration purposes only, in Figure B.13 and Figure B.14.

## Plug Valves (Lubricated and Non-lubricated)

Plug valves shall have a cylindrical or conical closure member that rotates about an axis perpendicular to the direction of flow.

NOTE A typical configuration for a plug valves with flanged and welding ends is shown, for illustration purposes only, in Figure B.15.

## 4.2 Conformance and General Performance Requirements

The manufacturer shall conform to all the applicable requirements of this specification.

An internationally recognized quality management system (such as API Q1 or ISO 9001) shall be applied to assist conformance with the requirements of this specification. The manufacturer shall conform to the requirements of the applicable quality management system.

Valves conforming to this specification shall be manufactured under the manufacturer's quality management system which shall conform to an internationally recognized standard such as API Q1 or ISO 9001.

The purchaser shall be permitted to make any investigation necessary in order to be assured of conformance by the manufacturer and to reject any material or product that does not conform.

Designs shall be validated in conformance with section 5.10 manufacturer's written specifications.

NOTE 1 Annex F provides design validation criteria that may be used for equipment provided in the as shipped condition.

Additional quality specification levels of Annex I shall apply when specified.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

NOTE 1 2 Annex I identifies identify supplemental requirements for nondestructive examinations and pressure testing that may be performed on a valve when specified by the manufacturer or purchaser. Unless specified in accordance with the allowances in Annex I, only testing and NDE requirements identified in Section 4 through Section 14 apply to valves manufactured to this specification.

The acceptable deviations to minimum specified requirements of Annex K shall apply when specified.

NOTE 2 3 Annex K identifies allowable modifications to specific requirements in Section 4 through Section 14 that may be applied to valves when specified by the purchaser. Valves manufactured with any allowed modification in accordance with Annex K conform to this specification. Unless otherwise specified in accordance with the allowances in Annex K, applicable requirements as stated in Section 4 through Section 14 apply to valves manufactured to this specification without modification.

The supplemental requirements in Annex L shall apply when specified.

NOTE 3 4 Annex L identifies allowable additions or supplements over the requirements in Section 4 through Section 14 that may be applied to valves when specified by the purchaser. Valves manufactured with any allowed addition or supplement in accordance with Annex L conform to this specification.

### 4.3 Pressure and Temperature Rating

#### **Standard Valves — ASME Pressure Class**

Standard valves covered by this specification shall be furnished in one of the following pressure classes (see 3.1.36):

- Class 150
- Class 300
- Class 600
- Class 900
- Class 1500
- Class 2500

~~Pressure-temperature ratings for class-rated valves shall conform to the rating table for the applicable material group per ASME B16.34 or for carbon steel per MSS SP-44.~~

Pressure-temperature ratings for class-rated valves shall conform to the rating table for the applicable material group per ASME B16.34 or per MSS SP-44 when applicable for material not listed in ASME B16.34.

The pressure-temperature rating applied shall be based on the material group of the valve end connector. Where the valve ends are made from material in two different groups, the material with the lower pressure-temperature rating shall determine the rating.

NOTE Different material or material forms may be used for body and bonnet or cover parts within the same valve.

All metallic pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts shall be designed to meet the identified valve pressure-temperature rating.

The manufacturer shall determine any limits on the maximum allowable operating pressure and shall identify the minimum and maximum design allowable temperatures resulting from the nonmetallic parts used.

## **~~Non-standard Valves—Intermediate Pressures and Temperatures~~**

**Non-standard valves with** intermediate pressure and temperature ratings shall conform to K.2.

NOTE Intermediate pressure and temperature rating cannot apply to valve designs with ASME flanged ends (see K.2)

~~Pressure-temperature ratings for valves made from materials not listed in ASME B16.34 shall be determined using the methods defined in ASME B16.34 Appendix B up to the temperature limitation of the valve.~~

Pressure-temperature ratings for valves made from materials not listed in ASME B16.34 shall be determined, up to the temperature limitation of the valve, using the methods defined in ASME B16.34 or in accordance with section 5.1.1 and 5.3.3.

### **4.4 Valve Bore Nominal Size**

#### **Nominal Size**

Valves manufactured to this specification shall be provided either:

- in nominal sizes as listed in Table 1, or
- in a size and bore determined by agreement when no size or minimum bore dimension is listed in Table 1, **see K.3.1.**

NOTE Welding-end valves may require a smaller **diameter bore** at the welding-end to mate with the pipe.

### **4.5 Valve Bore**

#### **~~4.4.2 Full-opening Valves~~**

Full-opening valves shall be unobstructed in the fully opened position and shall have an internal minimum circular opening for categorizing bore size as specified in Table 1. ~~When pipe is used in the construction of the valves, the pipe shall meet the tolerances of the applicable pipe specification.~~ Closure member and seat dimensions shall meet Table 1.

**When pipe is used in the construction of the valves, the pipe shall meet the tolerances of the applicable pipe specification.**

Valves with a noncircular opening through the closure member shall not be identified as full opening.

#### **~~4.4.3 Reduced-opening Valves with Circular Opening~~**

Reduced-opening valves with a circular opening through the closure member shall be supplied with a minimum bore as follows:

- valves NPS 4 (DN 100) to NPS 12 (DN 300): one size below nominal size of valve with bore according to Table 1,
- valves NPS 14 (DN 350) to NPS 24 (DN 600): one or two sizes below nominal size of valve with bore according to Table 1.
- **for valves that do not meet the above see K.3.**
- valves sizes less than NPS 4 (DN 100) or greater than NPS 24 (DN 600) in conformance with **L.x K.3**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

EXAMPLE An NPS 16 (DN 400) Class 1500 reduced-opening ball valve has an allowable minimum bore of 11.30 in. (287.0 mm).

**Table 1—Minimum Bore for Full-opening Valves**

NPS	DN	Minimum <sup>a</sup> Bore by Class, in. (mm) <sup>b</sup>			
		Class 150 to 600	Class 900	Class 1500	Class 2500
½	15	0.50 (12.7)	0.50 (12.7)	0.50 (12.7)	0.50 (12.7)
¾	20	0.75 (19.0)	0.75 (19.0)	0.75 (19.0)	0.75 (19.0)
1	25	0.98 (25.0)	0.98 (25.0)	0.98 (25.0)	0.98 (25.0)
1¼	32	1.25 (31.8)	1.25 (31.8)	1.25 (31.8)	1.25 (31.8)
1½	40	1.50 (38.0)	1.50 (38.0)	1.50 (38.0)	1.50 (38.0)
2	50	1.93 (49.0)	1.93 (49.0)	1.93 (49.0)	1.65 (42.0)
2½	65	2.44 (62.0)	2.44 (62.0)	2.44 (62.0)	2.05 (52.0)
3	80	2.91 (74.0)	2.91 (74.0)	2.91 (74.0)	2.44 (62.0)
4	100	3.94 (100.0)	3.94 (100.0)	3.94 (100.0)	3.42 (87.0)
6	150	5.91 (150.0)	5.91 (150.0)	5.67 (144.0)	5.16 (131.0)
8	200	7.91 (201.0)	7.91 (201.0)	7.55 (192.0)	7.04 (179.0)
10	250	9.92 (252.0)	9.92 (252.0)	9.41 (239.0)	8.78 (223.0)
12	300	11.93 (303.0)	11.93 (303.0)	11.30 (287.0)	10.43 (265.0)
14	350	13.15 (334.0)	12.67 (322.0)	12.40 (315.0)	11.50 (292.0)
16	400	15.16 (385.0)	14.69 (373.0)	14.17 (360.0)	13.11 (333.0)
18	450	17.16 (436.0)	16.65 (423.0)	15.98 (406.0)	14.72 (374.0)
20	500	19.17 (487.0)	18.54 (471.0)	17.87 (454.0)	16.50 (419.0)
22	550	21.18 (538.0)	20.55 (522.0)	19.69 (500.0)	—
24	600	23.19 (589.0)	22.44 (570.0)	21.50 (546.0)	—
26	650	24.92 (633.0)	24.29 (617.0)	23.38 (594.0)	—
28	700	26.93 (684.0)	26.18 (665.0)	25.23 (641.0)	—
30	750	28.94 (735.0)	28.03 (712.0)	27.00 (686.0)	—
32	800	30.66 (779.0)	29.92 (760.0)	28.74 (730.0)	—
34	850	32.68 (830.0)	31.81 (808.0)	30.50 (775.0)	—
36	900	34.41 (874.0)	33.66 (855.0)	32.24 (819.0)	—
38	950	36.42 (925.0)	35.59 (904.0)	—	—
40	1000	38.43 (976.0)	37.63 (955.8)	—	—
42	1050	40.16 (1020.0)	39.61 (1006.0)	—	—
48	1200	45.90 (1166.0)	45.24 (1149.0)	—	—
54	1350	51.65 (1312.0)	—	—	—
56	1400	53.54 (1360.0)	—	—	—
60	1500	57.40 (1458.0)	—	—	—
<b>FOOTNOTES</b> <sup>a</sup> There is no upper size limit for a valve bore. <sup>b</sup> The millimeter dimension is the inch dimension multiplied by 25.4 and rounded to one decimal place. “—” ■ No identified minimum bore.					

#### 4.4.4 Non-standard Opening Valves—Other Bore Sizes Reduced-opening Valves with noncircular Opening

A valve with a non-standard opening that does not conform to 4.5.1 or 4.5.2 shall still satisfy all applicable

#### requirements of this specification.

A reduced-opening valve with a noncircular opening that does not conform to 4.4.2 or 4.4.3 shall still satisfy all applicable requirements of this specification.

These valves shall include, but not be limited to the following:

- axial valves (see Figure B.1)
- check valve axial flow (see Figure B.6)
- check valve, long pattern, typical dual-plate wafer-type (See Figure B.9)
- check valve, piston (See Figure B.10)
- swing check valve, reduced opening (See Figure B.11)
- check valve, short pattern, single-plate wafer-type (See Figure B.12)
- plug valve (See Figure B.15)

NOTE Other valve configurations may apply.

Other bore and non-standard opening valve sizes shall conform to K.3

## 4.6 Manufacturing Processes

### Process Control

The process control activities associated with the manufacturing of a valve shall be as identified in Table 2 for each manufacturing location. The manufacturer shall maintain equipment and personnel to ensure conformance to the requirements listed in Table 2 for all activities performed by the manufacturer.

Table 2—Process Control Requirements

Process Control Activity	Performed by:	
	Manufacturer <sup>1</sup>	Outsourced <sup>2</sup>
Product Design and validation	X	X
Material Procurement	X	X
Receiving-Verification of Externally Provided Products or Activities	X	Not Permitted
Machining	X	X
In-Process Inspection	X	X
Welding	X	X
Assembly	X	Not Permitted
Factory Acceptance Testing (Section 10)	X	Not Permitted
Additional Specified Requirements per Annexes G, I, J, K, or L	X	X
Marking/Tagging/Nameplate	X	Not Permitted
Coating/Painting <sup>3</sup>	X	X
Corrosion Protection and Preparation for Transport	X	X
Final Inspection	X	Not Permitted
FOOTNOTES X = When performed (as applicable)		

- |  |
|--|
| 1 See 3.1.212<br>2 See 3.1.29<br>3 See Annex G |
|--|

When a manufacturer outsources any process required by the specification (see Table 2), the manufacturer shall ensure that all applicable elements of its quality management system are satisfied and shall maintain responsibility for product conformance to specified requirements.

### **Processes Requiring Validation**

The manufacturer, in conformance with their quality system as applicable, shall validate the following operations performed during manufacturing, as a minimum:

- heat treating (See 6.7 and Annex H)
- welding (See Section 7)
- nondestructive examination (including visual examination) (See 7.5.3.2, 7.9 and Annex I).

## **5 Design**

### **5.1 General**

#### **Design Standards and Calculations**

Design and calculations for pressure-containing parts and pressure-boundary bolting shall conform to an internationally recognized design code or standard such as ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, or Division 2; ASME 16.34; EN 12516-1 or EN 12516-2; and EN 13445-3.

NOTE 2 See K.4 for use of specific design designs codes.

The allowable stress values shall be consistent with the selected design code or standard.

If the selected design code or standard specifies a test pressure, less than 1.5 times the design pressure MAWP, then the design pressure MAWP for the body calculation shall be increased such that the hydrostatic test pressure in 10.3 and I.5 can be applied.

To address variability in bolt stress by torqueing, the theoretical bolt stress due to preload shall not exceed 70% of yield at allowable temperature.

~~Pressure containing parts shall include bodies, external trunnions, end connectors, bonnets/covers, and stems/external shaft.~~

#### **Pressure-containing Parts**

~~Pressure containing parts shall be designed with materials specified in Section 6.~~

~~Pressure boundary bolting shall be designed with materials specified in Section 8.~~

Pressure-containing parts shall include bodies, external trunnions, end connectors, bonnets/covers, pipe and flanges used on vent or drain systems, and stems/external shaft.

#### **Pressure-controlling Parts**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Pressure-controlling parts shall include the closure member (ball, disc, plug, gate, piston) and seat.

Design and calculations for pressure-controlling parts shall conform to a documented internationally recognized design code or standard.

Pressure-controlling parts shall be designed to satisfy the manufacturer's documented performance characteristics. The manufacturer shall document engineering practices and acceptance criteria on which the design is based.

### **Bolted Joint Design**

Where more than one seal is used to form the pressure-containing joint, the gasket or seal diameter used in the bolting calculation and closure flange stress verification shall be the outer seal diameter of the largest seal, or in the case of spiral wound gaskets, the median diameter shall be used. Required seating stress shall be confirmed for all seals and gaskets. When verifying the bolt stress at the outer seal diameter, the bolting stress shall not exceed 0.83 of SMYS.

NOTE Fire safe seal may be the largest diameter.

Bolting preload torques shall be calculated using internationally recognized standard, such as API 6A, ASME PCC-1 or EN 1591, with a coefficient of friction on the threads and nut face, based on bolting material, bolting coating and the type of lubricant applied.

## **5.2 Dimensions**

### **Standard Face-to-face and End-to-end Dimensions**

Standard face-to-face (A) and end-to-end (B and C) dimensions of valves shall conform to the applicable tables in Annex C.

NOTE See Figure B.1 to Figure B.15 reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C where shown.

Weld end-to-end (B) dimensions of valves shall conform to the applicable tables in Annex C.

Standard face-to-face and end-to-end dimensions for valve sizes not specified in Annex C shall conform to ASME B16.10.

Tolerances on standard face-to-face and end-to-end dimensions shall be  $\pm 0.06$  in. ( $\pm 1.5$  mm) for valve sizes smaller than NPS 12 (DN 300), and  $\pm 0.12$  in. ( $\pm 3.0$  mm) for valve sizes NPS 12 (DN 300) and larger.

NOTE See Figure B.1 to Figure B.15 reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C where shown.

### **Non-standard Face-to-face and End-to-end Dimensions**

Non-standard face-to-face and end-to-end dimensions shall conform to K.5. Non-standard dimensions shall include face-to-face and end-to-end dimensions not shown or not conforming to the values in tables in Annex C or ASME B16.10

If the non-standard end-to-end dimension includes the pup pipes/transition pieces, then the pup pipes/transition piece shall conform to all requirements of this standard.

The length of valves having one welding end and one flanged end shall be determined by adding half the length of a flanged-end valve to half the length of a welding-end valve.

Tolerances on non-standard face-to-face and end-to-end dimensions shall be  $\pm 0.06$  in. ( $\pm 1.5$  mm) for valve sizes smaller than NPS 12 (DN 300), and  $\pm 0.12$  in. ( $\pm 3.0$  mm) for valve sizes NPS 12 (DN 300) and larger.

NOTE Support legs on some valve designs may extend beyond the end-to-end dimensions to assure that the valve can be safely supported.

## **End Connectors**

### **5.2.1.1 Flanged Connectors**

#### **5.2.1.1.1 General**

Flanges shall be furnished with a raised face or ring joint face (raised face or full face). Specified dimensions, tolerances, and finishes, including drilling templates, flange facing, nut-bearing surfaces (i.e. spot facing and back facing), outside diameters, and thickness (see Figure 1) shall conform to:

- ASME B16.5 for sizes up to and including NPS 24 (DN 600).
- ASME B16.47, Series A for NPS 26 (DN 650) and larger sizes.
- MSS SP-44 for sizes NPS 12 (DN 300) to NPS 60 (DN 1500).

NOTE See K.6 for optional requirements for end connectors.

~~When required, valve end flanges shall be provided with tapped holes for engaging flange bolting.~~

~~Thread engagement in a flange with tapped holes shall provide full effective thread engagement, not including the chamfered thread, for a length at least equal to the nominal diameter of the bolt thread.~~

Through hole flange end connections shall be designed to allow heavy series nuts (ASME B18.2.2) to be used for the piping connections.

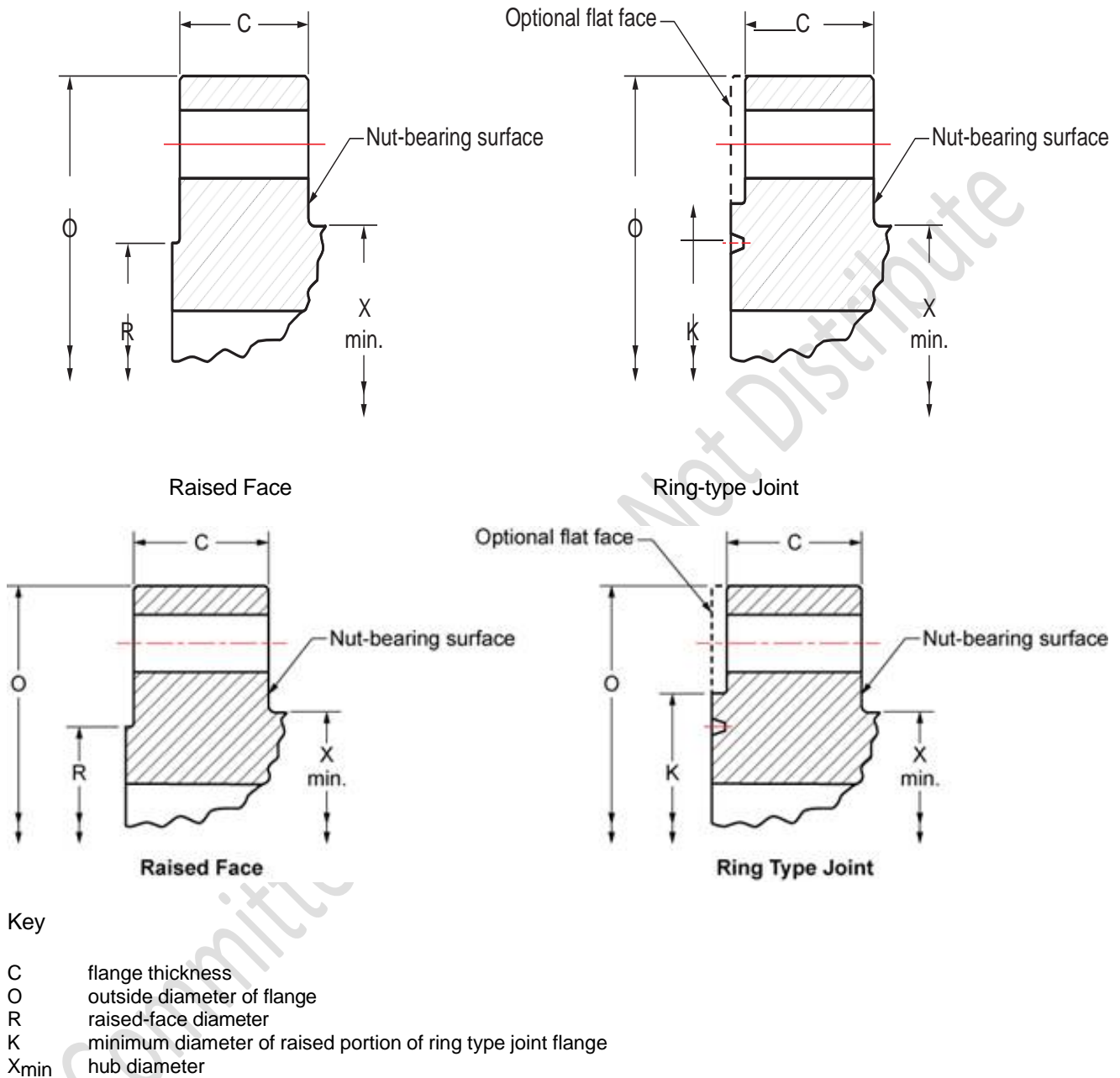
For valves with heavy wall sections, flanges with nut stops in accordance with Mandatory Appendix 2 of ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1 may apply.

The manufacturing method shall ensure flange alignment in accordance with 5.2.3.1.2 to 5.2.3.1.4.

#### **5.2.1.1.2 Offset of Aligned Flange Centerlines—Lateral Alignment**

For valves up to and including NPS 4 (DN 100), the maximum flange misalignment shall be 0.079 in. (2 mm). For valves larger than NPS 4 (DN 100), the maximum flange misalignment shall be 0.118 in. (3 mm).





**Figure 1—Typical Flange Dimensions**

#### 5.2.1.1.3 Parallelism of Aligned Flange Faces—Angular Alignment

For valves up to NPS 24 (DN 600) the maximum measured difference between flanges shall be 0.03 in./ft (2.5 mm/m).

For valves larger than NPS 24 (DN 600), the maximum parallelism misalignment shall be 0.02 in/ft (1.75 mm/m).

#### 5.2.1.1.4 Misalignment of Bolt Holes

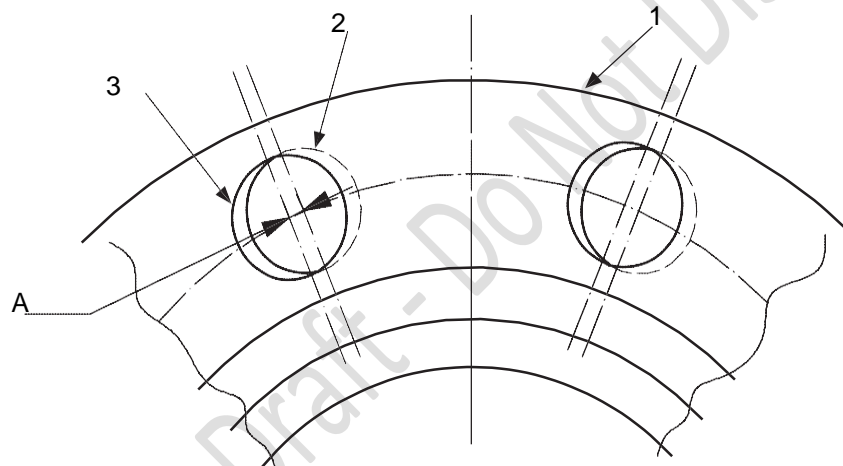
For valve end connectors, bolt-hole misalignment of the flange from one end of the valve to the other (see Figure 2) shall conform to the following:

- For valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller, the misalignment shall not exceed 0.06 in. (1.5 mm) 0.08 in. (2 mm) at the bolt holes
- For valves larger than NPS 4 (DN 100), the misalignment shall not exceed 0.12 in. (3.0 mm) at the bolt holes

Bolt holes shall equally straddle the vertical centerline.

**NOTE** This axis may not exist in an axial valve.

The surface of the nut bearing area at the back face of flanged valves shall be parallel to within 1° of the flange face.



#### Key

- 1 flange
- 2 hole in first flange
- 3 hole in opposite flange for alignment
- A bolt-hole misalignment (see 5.2.3.1.4)

**Figure 2—Bolt-hole Misalignment of Flange Across Valve**

#### 5.2.1.1.5 Studded-End Valve End Connectors

Manufacturer shall notify the purchaser when studded-end connectors are provided on one or more bolt holes. Studded-end connectors shall be provided with threaded holes (studded outlet) for engaging flange bolting.

Threaded body-flange holes for bolts 1 in. or less in diameter shall be threaded in accordance with ASME B1.1, UNC, Class 2B. For bolts 1-1/8 in. or more in diameter, such holes shall be threaded in accordance with ASME B1.1, 8-TPI, Class 2B.

**NOTE** See Annex K.xx for use of metric bolting.

Thread engagement in a flange with threaded holes shall provide full effective thread engagement, not including the chamfered thread, for a length at least equal to the nominal diameter of the bolt thread.

### 5.2.1.2 Weld-end Connectors

Weld-end dimensions shall conform to ASME B31.4 or ASME B31.8 or ASME B16.25.

NOTE 1 ASME B31.3 references to ASME B16.25.

NOTE 2 In the case of a heavy-wall valve body (thicker than the mating pipe), the outside profile may be tapered at 30° and then to 45° as illustrated in ASME B16.25.

The following details shall be specified for the mating pipe:

- outside diameter,
- length,
- wall thickness,
- material grade,
- specified minimum yield strength (SMYS),
- any special chemistry of the mating pipe, and
- if weld overlay has been applied.

NOTE 3 See K.6 for optional requirements for weld-end requirements.

NOTE 4 The pipe pup may be welded, and post weld heat treatment performed if applicable, prior to assembly.

Heat-treatment delivery conditions shall be marked on the pup piece.

## 5.3 Drive Train

### General

The drive train including the stem shall be designed such that the weakest point is outside the pressure boundary.

The valve design shall incorporate features to mitigate minimize the likelihood of misalignment or deflection of the valve stem.

NOTE The weight of the operator and associated drive train components may adversely affect the alignment and deflection of the valve stem.

### Torque/Thrust

#### 5.3.1.1 Axial, Floating and Trunnion Ball, Rising Stem Ball, Gate or Plug or Swing Check Valves

For axial, floating ball, trunnion ball, gate and plug valves, the design thrust or torque for all drive train calculations shall be at least 2.0 times the calculated breakaway thrust or torque as defined by 3.1.8.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

For swing check valves with extended shafts used for lock open operation the design torque for all drive train calculations shall be at least 2.0 times the torque to open the closure member.

### **5.3.2.2 — Rising Stem Ball Valves**

For ~~torque-seated~~ rising stem ball valves, the design thrust or torque for all drive train calculations shall be at least 1.5 times the ~~calculated~~ breakaway thrust or torque associated with the non-preferred sealing side and at least 2.0 times the ~~calculated~~ breakaway thrust or torque in the preferred sealing side.

NOTE Torque or thrust may be determined by calculation or by measurement.

### **Allowable Stress**

Design stresses for tensile stress ~~and~~ shear stress (including torsional shear stress) ~~and bearing stress~~ shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Div.1, except that the design stress intensity value,  $S_m$ , shall be limited to 67% of yield strength  $S_y$  for the design conditions.

The average primary shear stress across a section loaded ~~under~~ at design conditions in pure shear (e.g., keys, shear rings, screw threads, etc.) shall be limited to  $0.6S_m$ .

The maximum primary shear ~~under~~ at design conditions, exclusive of stress concentration at the periphery of a solid circular section in torsion, shall be limited to  $0.8S_m$   ~~$S_m$~~ .

Unless otherwise agreed, the design stress intensity limits shall not apply to the components of rolling-element or other proprietary bearings or high bearing strength capable materials that are included in the drive train where manufacturer's recommendations or limits derived from tests and service experience apply. These limits shall be justified in design documents.

The average bearing stress ~~under the maximum design load~~ shall be limited to the yield strength  ~~$S_y$~~   $S_y$  at ~~temperature~~ at design conditions.

NOTE The possibility of a shear failure may exist, when bearing loads are applied on parts having free edges, such as at a protruding edge or a keyway.

When mechanical properties at maximum ~~design~~ ~~allowable~~ temperature are not available, a yield test shall be performed at maximum ~~design~~ ~~allowable~~ temperature, or higher, to document the yield strength at maximum ~~design~~ ~~allowable~~ temperature. In order to establish pressure-temperature ratings, the allowable stress shall be based on the yield strength at ambient temperature and the elevated test temperature.

A joint efficiency factor of 0.75 shall be used for fillet welds.

### **Allowable Deflections**

Deflections of the ~~extended~~ drive train, ~~including extensions when provided~~, shall not prevent the closure member from reaching the fully closed or fully open position.

~~For all valves, attention shall be paid to deflection and strain.~~

NOTE Adherence to the allowable stress limits of design codes alone ~~might~~ ~~may~~ not result in a functionally acceptable design.

The manufacturer shall demonstrate, by calculation or test, that under loads resulting from **design pressure MAWP** and any defined pipe or external loads, distortion of the closure member or seat does not impair functionality or sealing.

### **~~Drive Train Bolting for Quarter-turn Valves~~**

Drive train bolting for quarter-turn valves shall not be subjected to direct shear.

**NOTE** Drive train bolting includes bolting used to mount an actuator.

## **5.4 Operations**

### **~~Method of Operation~~**

Method of operation (~~lever wrench~~, **manual** gearbox, or actuator) shall be specified.

When a **manual** gearbox is provided, the **gearbox** output torque/**thrust** rating shall be at least 1.5 times the maximum required operating torque/**thrust** of the valve.

Rotary motion to close a valve shall be clockwise.

**NOTE 1** Valve operational data may be supplied to the purchaser.

**NOTE 2** See L.2 for options related to valve operational data.

### **~~Wrenches (Levers) and Hand-wheels~~**

#### **5.4.1.1 Torque **or thrust** and Size**

The maximum force required at the hand-wheel or wrench(lever) to apply the breakaway torque or thrust shall not exceed 80 lbf (360 N) when applied against **MAOP MAWP**.

#### **5.4.1.2 Size**

Wrenches (levers) for valves shall either be of an integral design or consist of a head that fits on the stem and is designed to take an extended handle.

Wrenches (levers) shall not be longer than twice the face-to-face or end-to-end dimension of the valve.

**Wrenches (levers) longer than 24 in. (600mm) shall be capable of being removed.**

Hand-wheel diameter(s) shall not exceed 40 in. (1 m). Spokes shall not extend beyond the perimeter of the hand-wheel.

#### **5.4.1.3 ~~Extended Stem and Shaft Assemblies~~**

**NOTE 1** ~~Extended stems and shaft assemblies may be provided.~~

**NOTE 2** ~~See L.4 for options related to extended stems and shaft assemblies.~~

### **~~Position Indicators~~**

~~Except for check valves, the position of the closure member shall not be altered by dynamic forces of the passing flow or in the case of screw operated gate valves by forces generated from internal pressure.~~

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Unless otherwise specified, valves fitted with an operator actuator or gearbox shall be furnished with a visible indicator to show the open and the closed position of the closure member.

NOTE For buried/underground service, valves may not be required with position indicator when specified.

For plug and ball valves, the wrench and/or the position indicator shall be in line with the pipe when the valve is open and transverse when the valve is closed. The design shall be such that the component(s) of the indicator and/or wrench cannot be assembled to falsely indicate the valve position.

When the valve stem is provided with a key slot or master spline in plug or ball valves, the key/master spline shall be in line with the plug/ball bore.

Valves without position stops shall have provision for the verification of open and closed alignment with the operator/ actuator removed.

#### 5.4.4 Position of Closure Member

Except for check valves, the position of the closure member shall not be altered by dynamic forces of the passing flow or in the case of screw operated gate valves by forces generated from internal pressure.

#### ~~Travel Stops~~

Valves that do not require mechanical force to affect a seal shall be provided with travel stops on the valve and/or operator and they shall locate the position of the closure member in the open and closed position. The travel stops shall not affect the sealing capability of the valve.

NOTE See Annex D for guidance for travel stops by valve type.

#### ~~Operators Actuators~~

##### 5.4.5.1 General

Actuators and mounting kits shall conform to API 6DX.

##### 5.4.1.4 Alignment

Valve design shall minimize misalignment or improper assembly of components.

NOTE Misalignment or improper assembly of components may be prevented by means of a dowel pin or fitting bolt, which ensures the correct location of operator and stem extension assemblies.

##### 5.4.1.5 Sealing

~~The design of the~~ The interfaces between operator, or enclosed stem extension (when provided) and the valve shall be sealed to prevent ingress of external contaminants and moisture.

##### 5.4.1.6 Overpressure Protection

Operators and enclosed stem extension assemblies shall be provided with a means of preventing pressure buildup in the mechanism resulting from stem or bonnet seal leakage.

##### 5.4.1.7 Extended Stem and Shaft Assemblies

NOTE 1 Extended stems and shaft assemblies may be provided.

NOTE 2 See L.4 for options related to extended stems and shaft assemblies.

## 5.5 Cavity Pressure Relief

The manufacturer shall determine whether fluid becomes trapped in the body cavity in the open- and/or closed-valve position.

If liquid or multi-phase fluid trapping is possible, the valve shall be provided with automatic cavity-pressure relief.

For gas service for **design allowable** temperature above 250°F (121°C) the manufacturer shall determine the need for cavity relief.

For **design allowable** temperature up to 250°F (121°C) the valve cavity relief shall not exceed 33% differential pressure above the valve pressure rating.

For allowable temperature above 250°F (121°C) the valve cavity relief pressure shall be specified by the manufacturer. When designed to achieve a higher cavity relief pressure, the valve **shell** shall be designed and tested to the **withstand** a higher **hydrostatic** shell **test** pressure. The hydrostatic shell test shall conform to 10.3.2 or 10.3.3.

**Relief pressures for design temperatures above 250°F (121°C) shall be specified by the manufacturer.**

External cavity relief valves shall be NPS ½ (DN 15) or larger.

NOTE 1 If a relief valve fitted to the cavity is required, purchaser may specify provisions to facilitate in service testing.

NOTE 2 Cavity relief testing and functionality may be demonstrated by tests in I.9.2 for trunnion mounted ball valves and gate valves.

## 5.6 Body Penetrations

### Vents and Drains

All upstream seated valves shall be equipped with a drain **or vent** connector.

**Vent and drain connectors shall be threaded, welded, studded outlet or flanged**

If threaded, tapered threads shall be capable of providing a seal and shall conform to ASME B1.20.1.

If parallel threads are used, the connector shall have a head section for trapping and retaining a sealing member suitable for the specified valve service. Parallel threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1 or ISO 228-1.

The drain size shall conform to Table 3.

Table 3—Sizes for Drain

Nominal Size of Valve (Full or Reduced Bore) Valve Size		Minimum Pipe Thread/pipe Size* in. NPT(mm)	Threaded Connector*
NPS	DN		
½ to 1½ <2	15 to 40 <50	¼ (8)	Tapered or Parallel

2 to 8	50 to 200	$\frac{1}{2}$ (15)	Tapered or Parallel
10 and larger >8	250 and larger >200	1 (25)	Tapered or Parallel
FOOTNOTE *The purchaser may specify other sizes and connector types <del>at the time of contract</del> in conformance with K.7			

## Injection Points

Injection fittings shall have a ~~design pressure~~ MAWP not less than the greater of the ~~rated pressure~~ MAWP of the valve or the injection pressure.

Tapered threads shall be capable of providing a seal and shall conform to ASME B1.20.1.

Parallel threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1 or ISO 228-1.

Injection points shall incorporate a ~~check valve~~ non-return valve and a secondary means of isolation for each injection point.

When provided:

- Seat injection points shall have two non-return valves where one of the non-return valves shall be ~~placed~~ secured in the valve independent of the outer injection fitting.
- Injection fittings shall incorporate a ~~standard or giant~~ button head connector that is protected by a ~~threaded~~ pressure containing cap/plug. This requirement shall not apply to lubricated plug valves.
- Protective caps shall:
  - seal-off the button head connector by plugging the sealant port.
  - allow any entrapped pressure to be released by the provision of a vent hole.
- ~~Emergency~~ stem/shaft ~~sealant~~ injection points shall be located above the primary sealing barrier and shall include a ~~button head~~ fitting inclusive of a non-return valve and a ~~protective~~ pressure containing cap/plug.
- Injector fittings of injectable packing points shall include a non-return valve and plunger.

## 5.7 Stem Retention

Valves shall be designed to ensure that the stem is retained by pressure-containing parts ~~or and pressure boundary bolting~~ and the stem does not eject from internal pressure, under any operating condition or if the packing gland components ~~and/or~~ valve operator mounting components are removed.

## 5.8 Antistatic

~~Ball, gate and plug valves shall have electrical resistance not to exceed 10Ω.~~

Ball, gate, and plug valves shall have electric resistance between the closure member and the valve body and between the stem/shaft and the valve body not exceeding 10Ω when measured using direct current power source of 12V.



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

NOTE See L.8 for optional testing of electrical resistance.

## 5.9 Lifting

The manufacturer shall develop lifting sketches and handling instructions (see 14.2.1) for safe lifting operations for valves weighing greater than 55lbs (25kg). The safe working limit (SWL) and center of gravity (CofG) on any lifting points shall be specified in the lifting sketches and handling instructions.

The manufacturer shall determine the need for and verify suitability of lifting points of the valve.

~~Valve shall be marked to indicate the SWL of each lifting point.~~

NOTE 1 Regulatory requirements may specify special design, manufacturing, and certification for lifting points.

NOTE 2 For design guidance on lifting lugs, see ASME BTH-1 (Service class 0) or API 17D.

NOTE 3 See K.8 for additional requirements for lifting points.

## 5.10 Design Process

### General

Designs shall be reviewed, verified and validated in conformance with manufacturer's written specifications.

Design requirements shall include, but not be limited to, those criteria for size, test and operating pressures, material, environmental, and other pertinent requirements on which the design is based.

### Design Documentation

Documentation of designs shall include methods, assumptions, calculations, and design requirements.

~~Design requirements shall include, but not be limited to, those criteria for size, test and operating pressures, material, environmental, and other pertinent requirements on which the design is based.~~

Design documentation media shall be clear, legible, reproducible, and retrievable. Design documentation shall be retained for 5 10 years after the last unit of that model, size, and rated working pressure is manufactured.

### Design Review and Verification

Design ~~documentation~~ shall be reviewed and verified by any qualified individual other than the individual who created the original design.

### Design Validation

Manufacturers shall document their design validation procedures and the results of design validation.

~~NOTE See K.9 for additional design validation options.~~

NOTE Annex F provides one method of design validation criteria that may be used for valve provided in the as shipped condition.

## 6 Materials

### 6.1 Metallic Requirements

## General

Metallic pressure-containing ~~or~~ and pressure-controlling materials in contact with process fluids shall have written material specifications which shall define the following:

- material grade,
- chemical analysis,
- heat treatment,
- mechanical properties ~~from tensile test (tensile),~~ and,
- certification to report all items listed in 6.1.

Other requirements of the material specifications shall be as follows, when applicable:

- carbon equivalent (CE),
- Charpy impacts, ~~and,~~
- hardness, ~~and,~~
- ~~other testing.~~

Metallic pressure-containing parts shall be made of materials consistent with the pressure-temperature rating as determined in conformance with 4.3.

NOTE 1 See K.10 for use options of other materials

NOTE 2 ~~See API 20A, API 20B and API 20C for guidance on selection of casting and forging material manufacturers. See API 20A, API 20B and API 20C for guidance on qualification and production for casting and forging material manufacturers.~~

NOTE 3 Use of materials that conform to API 20A, API 20B and API 20C does not require that the materials be supplied from a facility that has been licensed to API 20A, API 20B or API 20C.

NOTE ~~4.3~~ See API 20J for guidance on use of outsourced distributors of metallic material.

## Cast Parts

All cast material shall be manufactured using an industry-recognized process.

## Forged Parts

All forged material shall be formed using a hot-working practice and heat treatment that produces a wrought (no cast dendritic elements) structure throughout the material.

All forged pressure-containing material shall have a minimum ~~forge~~ forging reduction ratio of 3:1 as calculated per API 20B or API 20C. The forging ratio shall be included as part of the material certifications.

## 6.2 Nonmetallic Requirements

Nonmetallic seals in contact with process fluids shall have written material specifications which shall define the

following:

- generic base polymer (see ASTM D1418,), if applicable,

NOTE 1 Reference to generic base polymer does not apply to graphite material,

- generic thermoplastic (see ASTM D4000), if applicable,
- physical property requirements;
- storage and age-control requirements.

NOTE 2 For guidance on qualification of polymeric seal manufacturers, see API 20L.

Elastomeric materials for valves in gas service at pressures of Class 600 and above shall be resistant to rapid gas decompression (RGD) ~~anti-explosive decompression (AED) resistant.~~

NOTE 3 See ~~L.7 and L.8~~ L.27 for additional requirements for seals qualification testing.

The manufacturer's written requirements for nonmetallic seals shall include the following minimum provisions:

- batch number/traceability;
- cure/mold date;
- shelf-life expiration date.

### 6.3 Composition Limits

The chemical composition of carbon steel pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts shall conform to the applicable material standard.

The chemical composition of carbon steel welding ends shall meet the following requirements.

- The carbon content shall not exceed 0.23 % by mass.
- The sulfur content shall not exceed 0.020 % by mass.
- The phosphorus content shall not exceed 0.025 % by mass.
- The carbon equivalent (CE) shall not exceed 0.43 %.

The CE shall be calculated in conformance with equation ~~1~~ 2:

$$CE = C \% + Mn/6 \% + (Cr \% + Mo \% + V \%)/5 + (Ni \% + Cu \%)/15 \quad (1) \quad (2)$$

The chemical composition of other carbon steel parts shall conform to the applicable material standard.

The carbon content of austenitic stainless-steel welding ends shall not exceed 0.03 % by mass, except for stabilized material in which case a carbon content of up to 0.08 % by mass is permissible.

NOTE See K.11 for use options of other chemical composition.

### 6.X Tensile Test Requirements

Tensile test specimens shall be removed from a test coupon (TC) after the final heat-treatment cycle.

Pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts made from ductile materials shall have a minimum of one tensile test performed at room temperature in accordance with ASTM A370, ASTM E8, or ISO 6892-1. For metallic materials, the yield strength shall be determined using the relevant industry material standards.

The minimum elongation at break shall be in accordance with the industry material standard, but not less than 15 % minimum.

Pressure-controlling parts made from non-ductile metallic materials shall have a minimum of one tensile test performed using the ASTM method for that material. Where no test method exists, the testing shall be in accordance with ASTM A370, ASTM E8, or ISO 6892-1.

For wear resistant alloys as defined per NACE MR0175/ISO 15156, a tensile test shall not be required.

Non-ductile materials shall not be used for pressure-containing parts.

If the results of the tensile testing do not satisfy the applicable requirements, two additional tests (removed from the same TC with no additional heat treatment) shall be allowed to qualify the material. The results of each additional test shall satisfy the applicable requirements.

## 6.4 Impact Test

Carbon, alloy, and stainless steel (except austenitic grades) for pressure-containing parts in valves with a specified design valve minimum operating temperature below  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) shall be impact-tested. The test method shall be the V-notch technique and shall conform to ASTM A370 or ISO 148-1.

When using ISO 148-1, a striker with a radius of 8 mm shall be used.

NOTE 1 Design standards or local requirements can may require impact testing for minimum design valve minimum operating temperatures higher than  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

A minimum of one impact test, comprised of a set of three specimens, shall be performed on a representative test bar of each heat of the material in the final heat-treated condition.

Test specimens shall be cut from a separate or attached block taken from the same heat, reduced by forging where applicable, and heat-treated to the same heat treatment, including stress relieving, as the product materials.

NOTE 2 It is not necessary to retest pressure-containing parts stress relieved at or below the previous stress relieving temperature or  $50^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $28^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) below of the tempering temperature of the original material.

The impact test shall be performed at or below the lowest temperature as defined in the applicable material specifications or the valve minimum operating temperature, whichever is lowest.

Impact test results for bolting material shall meet the requirements of the applicable material specification.

Impact test results for full-size specimens shall meet the requirements of Table 4 or Table 5, as applicable.

Test specimen orientation shall conform to the applicable material specification. If the material specification does not define test specimen orientation, either transverse or longitudinal direction shall be acceptable.

**Table 4—Minimum V-notch Impact Requirements for Material other than Duplex and Super Duplex Stainless Steel (Full-size Specimen)**

Specified Minimum Tensile Strength		Average of Three Specimens		Minimum of Single Specimen	
KSI	MPa	Ft-lbs.	Joules	Ft-lbs.	Joules
≤85	≤586	15	20	12	16
>85 to 100	>586 to 689	20	27	16	21
>100	>689	25	34	19	26

**Table 5—Minimum V-notch Impact Requirements for Duplex and Super Duplex Stainless Steel (Full-size Specimen)**

Minimum Test Temperature		Average of Three Specimens		Minimum of Single Specimen	
°F	°C	Ft-lbs.	Joules	Ft-lbs.	Joules
−50	−46	33	45	26	35

Where the material specification for the pipeline design standard requires impact values to be higher than those shown in Table 4, the higher values shall apply.

If an impact test fails, then a retest of three additional specimens removed from the same TC, with no additional heat treatment, may be made, each of which shall exhibit an impact value equal to or exceeding the required average value.

If sub size specimens are used, the Charpy V-notch impact requirements shall be equal to that of the 10 mm x 10 mm specimens multiplied by the adjustment factor listed in Table 6 at the full-size specimen test temperatures.

**Table 6—Adjustment Factors for Sub-size Impact Specimens**

Specimen (Dimension)	Adjustment Factor
10mm x10mm (full size)	1 (none)
10 mm x 7.5 mm	0.833
10 mm x 6.7 mm	0.780
10 mm x 5.0 mm	0.667
10 mm x 3.3 mm	0.440
10 mm x 2.5 mm	0.333

## 6.5 Sour Service

Metallic materials for use in sour service shall conform to NACE MR0175/ ISO 15156 (all parts 1, 2 and 3).

NOTE For guidance to use of NACE MR0175/ ISO 15156 (all parts 1, 2 and 3) on bolting see L.12.

**Table 6—Adjustment Factors for Sub-size Impact Specimens**

Specimen (Dimension)	Adjustment Factor
10mm x10mm (full size)	1 (none)
10 mm x 7.5 mm	0.833
10 mm x 6.7 mm	0.780

10 mm x 5.0 mm	0.667
10 mm x 3.3 mm	0.440
10 mm x 2.5 mm	0.333

## 6.6 Drain, Vent and Injection Components Body Penetrations

Materials for drain, vent, and injection components or other parts shall be the same as compatible with the valve body material or made from a corrosion-resistant material.

## 6.7 Production Heat-treating Equipment

### General

Heat-treating using batch or continuous type furnaces for pressure-containing parts, pressure-controlling parts and TCs shall be performed with equipment that is used to process production parts meeting the requirements of this Specification. These requirements shall not apply to surface coatings or localized PWHT.

Heat treatment of production parts shall be performed with heat-treating equipment that satisfies one of the following:

- Calibrated in accordance with 6.7.2 and 6.7.3 and heat-treat batch-type furnaces that have been surveyed in accordance with Annex H; or,
- Calibrated and surveyed in accordance with SAE AMS-2750EE AMS2750F Class 1, 2 or 3 for tempering and Class 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 for normalizing and austenitizing. See and Table 7.

**Table 7—Heat Treatment Thermal Uniformity Survey (TUS) Requirements**

Heat Treatment Type	Furnace Classes				
	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4	Class 5
	TUS Tolerance ±5°F (±3°C)	TUS Tolerance ±10°F (±6°C)	TUS Tolerance ±15°F (±8°C)	TUS Tolerance ±20°F (±10°C)	TUS Tolerance ±25°F (±14°C)
Normalizing	X	X	X	X	X
Annealing	X	X	X	X	X
Solution Annealing	X	X	X	X	X
Austenitizing	X	X	X	X	X
Tempering	X	X	X	—	—
Precipitation Hardening	X	X	X	—	—
Aging	X	X	X	—	—
Stress Relieving	X	X	X	—	—
NOTE Symbol “—” used to show actions that are not applicable					

Automatic controlling and recording instruments shall be used.

Thermocouples shall be placed in the furnace working zone(s) and protected from furnace atmospheres by means of suitable protective devices.

NOTE 1 For use of outsourced heat treatment services for Batch-type furnaces, see API 20H for guidance.

NOTE 2 For use of outsourced heat treatment services for Continuous-type furnaces, see API 20N for guidance.

### **Instrument Accuracy**

The controlling and recording instruments used for the heat-treatment processes shall be accurate to  $\pm 1\%$  of their full-scale range.

**Automatic controlling and recording instruments shall be used.**

### **Instrument Calibration**

Temperature-controlling and recording instruments shall be calibrated at least once every 3 months.

### **Production Type Equipment—Batch Type Furnaces**

#### **6.7.1.1 Furnace Survey Temperature Tolerance**

The following criteria shall be satisfied when performing a temperature survey in accordance with Annex H.

##### **6.7.1.1.1 Austenitizing, Normalizing, Annealing or Solution Annealing Furnaces**

The temperature at any point in the working zone of a furnace used for austenitizing, normalizing, annealing or solution annealing shall not vary by more than  $\pm 25\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $\pm 14\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) from the furnace set-point temperature after the furnace working zone has been brought up to temperature. Before the furnace set-point temperature is reached, none of the temperature readings shall exceed the set-point temperature by more than the temperature tolerance.

##### **6.7.1.1.2 Tempering, Aging or Stress-relieving Furnaces**

Furnaces which are used for tempering, aging and/or stress-relieving shall not vary by more than  $\pm 15\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $\pm 8\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) from the furnace set-point temperature after the furnace working zone has been brought up to temperature. Before the furnace set-point temperature is reached, none of the temperature readings shall exceed the set-point temperature by more than the temperature tolerance.

##### **6.7.1.1.3 Multiple Use Furnaces**

For furnaces used for heat treatment operations identified in 6.7.4.1.1 and 6.7.4.1.2, the heat treatment supplier shall define the temperature range for each operation. The furnace temperature uniformity survey shall conform to the requirements specified in 6.7.4.1.1 and 6.7.4.1.2, as appropriate for the process used.

#### **6.7.1.2 Temperature Uniformity Survey Frequency**

The temperatures within each batch-type furnace shall be surveyed within 1 year prior to use of the furnace for heat treatment in conformance with Annex H.

##### **6.7.1.3 Furnace Repairs**

When a furnace is repaired or rebuilt, a new temperature survey shall be carried out before the furnace is used for heat treatment, subject to the following. Repairs that return the furnace to the condition it was in at the time of the previous furnace survey and calibration or repairs that do not affect the temperature tolerance of the furnace shall not require a new temperature survey and calibration.

The SAE **AMS-2750** **AMS2750F** sections on furnace modifications and furnace repairs shall be used to determine whether a new furnace survey is required. All furnace repairs and modifications shall be documented, and the responsible Quality Assurance organization shall make determination whether an

additional furnace survey and calibration is required based on the repairs or modifications in conformance with SAE AMS2750 or SAE AMS-H-6875.

#### **6.7.1.4 Production Type Equipment—Continuous-type Furnaces**

Continuous-type furnaces shall be operated, maintained, modified, and repaired in conformance with SAE AMS2750 or SAE AMS-H-6875.

Continuous-type furnaces shall be surveyed in conformance with Annex H.

#### **6.7.1.5 Records Retention**

Records of furnace calibration and surveys shall be maintained for a period not less than 5 years. The minimum records of furnace calibration/survey shall be a certificate of conformance in accordance with Annex H.

## **7 Welding**

### **7.1 General**

Section 7, shall not apply to material surface property control, such as thermal spray process [e. g high velocity oxygen fuel (HVOF)]

### **7.2 Outsourced Welding**

NOTE See API 20G for guidance on the use of outsourced Welding Services.

### **7.3 Consumables**

Welding consumables shall conform to the American Welding Society or manufacturer's specifications.

The manufacturer shall have a written procedure for storage and control of welding consumables. Materials of low- hydrogen type (including electrodes, wires, and fluxes) shall be stored and used as recommended by the manufacturer of the welding consumable to retain their original low-hydrogen properties.

### **7.4 Qualification**

Welding, including repair welding, of pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts shall be performed in conformance with procedures qualified to 7.4, 7.5 and 7.6 in addition to ASME BPVC, Section IX; or, qualified to ISO 15607, ISO 15609, ISO 15614-1 and ISO 15614-7.

Welders and welding operators shall be qualified in conformance with ASME BPVC, Section IX, ISO 9606-1, or ISO 14732.

NOTE The purchaser, pipeline design standards, material specifications, and/or local requirements may specify additional requirements.

The results of all qualification tests shall be documented in a PQR. The results of all qualification tests shall be documented in a PQR and retained in conformance to the requirements of 14.1.

PWHT shall conform to the applicable material specification or design code.

### **7.5 Weld Overlay**

#### **General**



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Qualification of all weld overlay shall conform to ASME, BPVC, Section IX or to ISO 15614-7.

Hardness survey requirements shall be applied in conformance with the requirements of NACE MR-0175/ ISO 15156 when the valves are specified for use in **this sour** service.

### **Hard-facing Weld Overlays**

#### **7.5.1.1 General**

Weld overlays for hard-facing shall be applied to thickness and other limitations as detailed in the **manufacturer's** qualified welding procedure (WPS and PQR).

#### **7.5.1.2 Visual Inspection**

~~Parts with hard facing shall be visually inspected in conformance with applicable industry material specification.~~

### **Corrosion Resistant Alloy (CRA) Weld Overlays**

#### **7.5.1.3 General**

For any CRA weld overlay with nickel-based alloy UNS N06625, the weld metal chemical analysis at the final qualified minimum cladding thickness identified on the procedure qualification shall be iron dilution class Fe 10: iron mass fraction 10.0% maximum, unless the purchaser specifies otherwise (see **L.9 K.13**).

The iron dilution achieved at the finished minimum qualified thickness shall be clearly identified on the weld procedure qualification records.

For all other compositions of weld overlay, the chemical analysis of the weld metal shall conform to the manufacturer's written specification at the minimum qualified thickness.

#### **7.5.1.4 NDE in the Final Supplied Condition**

CRA weld overlays in the final supplied condition shall be visually inspected in conformance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 9. The following acceptance criteria shall apply:

- Undercut shall not reduce the thickness in the area (considering both sides) to below the minimum thickness.
- Surface porosity and exposed slag shall not be permitted on or within **1.77 in (45 mm)** of seating surfaces

Surface NDE shall be performed on the weld overlay in the final supplied condition using penetrant testing in conformance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 6. Acceptance shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 8.

## **7.6 Impact Testing**

Qualifications of procedures for welding of pressure-containing parts and for repair welding shall conform to 7.6.

Impact testing shall be performed on carbon, alloy, and stainless steel (except austenitic grades) for the qualification of procedures for welding on valves with a **design allowable** temperature below  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

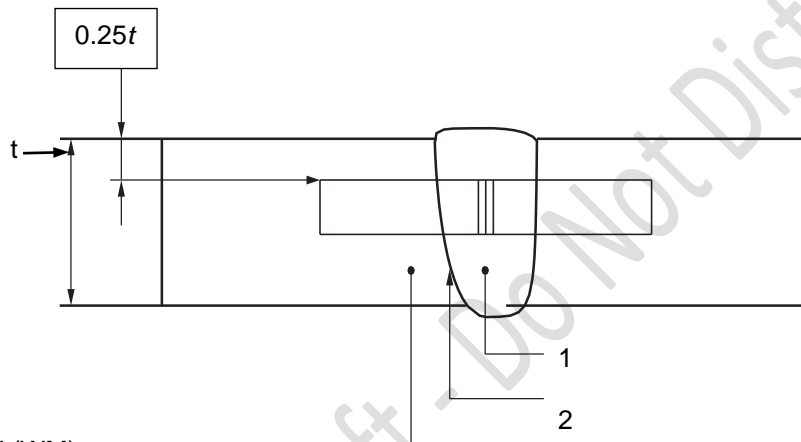
NOTE Design standards and/or local requirements may require impact testing at minimum **design allowable** temperatures above  **$20^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$ )**.

Impact test results for full-size specimens shall meet the requirements of Table 4 or Table 5, as applicable. When sub-sized specimens are used, the Charpy V-notch impact requirements shall be equal to that of the 10 mm x 10 mm specimens multiplied by the adjustment factor listed in Table 6 at the full-size specimen test temperatures.

As a minimum, one set of three weld metal (WM) impact specimens shall be taken from the WM at the location shown in Figure 3. The specimens shall be oriented with the notch perpendicular to the surface of the material.

Multiple sets of weld metal impact specimens shall be required when more than one welding process is used. Weld metal impact testing shall be performed to represent each welding process being qualified.

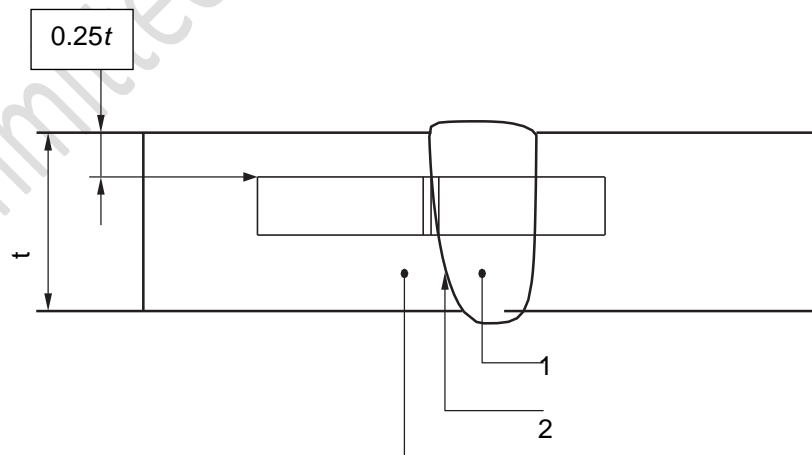
A set of three impact specimens shall be taken from the heat-affected zone (HAZ) at the location shown in Figure 4. The notch shall be placed perpendicularly to the material surface at a location resulting in a maximum amount of HAZ material located in the resulting fracture.



**Key**

- 1 weld metal (WM)
- 2 heat-affected zone (HAZ)
- 3 base metal (BM)

**Figure 3—Charpy V-notch Weld Metal Specimen Location**



**Key**

- 1 weld metal (WM)
- 2 heat-affected zone (HAZ)

3 base metal (BM)

**Figure 4—Charpy V-notch Heat-affected Zone Specimen Location**

The HAZ tests shall be conducted for each of the materials being joined when the base materials being joined are of a different P-number and/or group number that conforms to ASME BPVC, Section IX or **ISO 9606-1, ISO 15607, ISO 15609, ISO 15614-1, and ISO 15608 or ISO/TR 15608** or when one or both of the base materials being joined are not listed in the P- number and/or group number.

Impact testing shall conform to ASTM A370 or ISO 148-1 using the Charpy V-notch technique. Impact specimens shall be etched to determine the location of the weld and HAZ.

**When using ISO 148-1, a striker with a radius of 8 mm shall be used.**

The impact test temperature for welds and HAZs shall be at or below the minimum **design allowable** temperature specified for the valve. Impact test results for full-size specimens shall meet the requirements of 6.4. If the material specification requires higher impact values than those shown in 6.4, the higher values shall apply.

## 7.7 Hardness Testing

Hardness testing shall be carried out as part of the welding procedure qualification on pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts in valves required to meet NACE MR0175, ISO 15156 (all parts).

Hardness surveys shall be performed on base metal (BM), **weld metal (WM)**, and **heat-affected zone (HAZ)** in conformance with the requirements of NACE MR0175, ISO 15156 (all parts).

## 7.8 Visual Inspection—**Fillet and attachment Welds to pressure-containing parts Pressure-containing Fillet and Attachment Welds**

**Fillet and attachment** Welds to pressure-containing parts shall be visually inspected in conformance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 9. The following acceptance criteria shall apply:

- Undercut shall not reduce the thickness in the area (considering both sides) to below the minimum thickness.
- Surface porosity and exposed slag shall not be permitted on or within 1.77 in. (45 mm) of seating surfaces

## 7.9 Visual Inspection—**Pressure Containing and Pipe Pup Welds**

Pressure-containing welds and pipe pup-to-valve welds shall be visually inspected in conformance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 9. The following acceptance criteria shall apply:

**Pressure-containing pipe pup-to-valve welds shall be visually inspected in conformance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 9.**

- Undercut shall not reduce the thickness in the area (considering both sides) to below the minimum thickness.
- Surface porosity and exposed slag shall not be permitted on or within 1.77in. (45 mm) of seating surfaces.

## 7.10 NDE—**Pipe Pup-to-Valve Welds**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

For all pressure-containing pipe pup-to-valve welds, surface NDE shall be performed using one of the following methods:

~~For all pressure-containing welds and pipe pup-to-valve welds, surface NDE shall be performed using one of the following methods:~~

- Magnetic particle testing on weld bevels of weld ends after machining shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 7 and acceptance shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 6.
- Penetrant testing on weld bevels of weld ends after machining shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 6 and acceptance shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 8.

For all pressure-containing pipe pup-to-valve welds, volumetric NDE examination shall be performed using one of the following methods:

~~For all pressure-containing welds and pipe pup-to-valve welds, volumetric NDE examination shall be performed using one of the following methods:~~

- Radiographic testing on 100% of the welds in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 2 and acceptance shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, UW-51 for linear indications and ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 4 for rounded indications.
- Ultrasonic testing on 100% of the welds in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 4 and acceptance shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 12.

NOTE See L.29 for additional requirements for radiography of pipe pup welds.

## 7.11 Manufacturing Repair

### Casting Repair at the Material Supplier

The manufacturer's written material specification for castings shall specify the limitations for welding repair at the casting material supplier as follows:

- Requirements for qualified weld procedures and qualified welders in conformance with ASTM A488, ASME BPVC Section IX or ISO 15607, ISO 15609, ISO 15614-1 and ISO 15614-7 or equivalent,
- Requirement to perform new mechanical testing in conformance with the original material specification, in case the PWHT temperature is less than 50°F (28°C) below the final tempering temperature of the original material. Requirement to perform new mechanical testing in conformance with the original material specification if the PWHT is a solution anneal.

NOTE Per API 20A, repair welding is defect removal resulting in a wall thickness below an acceptable value as specified in purchasing documents.

### ~~Casting Repair at the Manufacturer~~

Repair of defects shall be performed in conformance with a documented procedure specifying requirements for defect removal, welding, heat treatment, nondestructive examination (NDE), and reporting as applicable.

Removal of surface defects shall not compromise the minimum wall thickness and shall provide a smooth transition between the ground area and the original contour. After surface defect removal, the excavated area

shall be examined by either: magnetic-particle (MT) or liquid-penetrant (PT) methods in conformance with Annex I.

- magnetic-particle (MT) inspection in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 7 and acceptance criteria shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 7 or

- liquid-penetrant (PT) examination in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 6 and acceptance criteria shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 7.

After completion, repair welds on pressure-containing parts shall be examined using MT or PT, as well as the same NDE method that was used to identify the defect when another method was used. If visual inspection was used to identify a defect, inspection by MT or PT alone shall be acceptable. Method and acceptance criteria shall be as specified in 7.11.2 Annex I for the appropriate product form. The final NDE activities shall be conducted after any required post-weld heat treatment.

Repair weld of castings shall be performed in conformance with the applicable material standard, including any PWHT when required.

When the PWHT temperature is not less than 50 °F (28 °C) below the final tempering temperature of the original material, new mechanical testing shall be performed in conformance with the original material specification.

When the PWHT is a solution anneal, then new mechanical testing shall be performed in conformance with the original material specification.

## **Forgings and Plate**

Weld repair on forgings and plates shall be limited to being performed to only correct machining errors.

Unless otherwise agreed, weld repair of forgings and plates shall not be performed to correct material defects (see K.12).

## **Repair of welds**

Repair of welds shall be performed in accordance with the applicable design code or standard listed in 5.1, including any PWHT where applicable.

## **8 Bolting**

### **8.1 Pressure-Boundary Bolting**

Pressure-boundary bolting material shall be qualified and manufactured to a minimum of API 20E, BSL-1 or API 20F, BSL-2, as applicable. Pressure boundary bolting shall conform to either API 20E, BSL-1 or API 20F, BSL-2, as applicable. The manufacturer shall determine method used for conformance.

Pressure-boundary bolting materials not listed in API 20E or API 20F shall conform to manufacturer's written material specification and design code listed 5.1.

NOTE 1 Use of bolting that conforms to API 20E, and API 20F does not require that the bolting be supplied from a facility that has been licensed to API 20E or API 20F.

NOTE 2 See API 21TR1 for guidance on selection of bolting materials

Hardness limits for pressure-boundary bolting that do not conform to 8.1 shall conform to K.13.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

Low-temperature carbon and alloy steel bolting shall conform to ASTM A320/A320M for the specific grade of material. ~~Bolting greater than 2½ in. (62.5 mm) shall conform the ASTM A320/A320M, Grade L43.~~

## 8.2 Other Bolting

~~Other bolting shall conform to the manufacturer's written material specification.~~ Other bolting shall conform to known industry specifications or the manufacturer's written material specification. Sort Key 610

## 9 Quality Control

### 9.1 Measuring and Test Equipment

#### ~~Control~~

Equipment used to inspect, test, or examine valve or valve parts shall be identified, controlled, calibrated, and adjusted at specified intervals in accordance with documented manufacturer instructions, and consistent with nationally or internationally recognized standards specified by the manufacturer, to maintain the accuracy required by this specification.

~~Equipment used to inspect, test, or examine material or other equipment used for acceptance shall be identified, controlled, calibrated, and adjusted at specified intervals.~~

Calibration intervals shall be established by the ~~valve~~ manufacturer for calibrations based on repeatability and degree of usage.

#### ~~Dimension-measuring Equipment~~

~~Dimension-measuring equipment shall be controlled and calibrated in conformance with methods specified in documented procedures.~~

#### ~~Pressure-measuring Devices~~

##### 9.1.1.1 Type and Accuracy

Test pressure-measuring devices shall be accurate to at least  $\pm 2.0$  % of full scale. If analog pressure gauges are used in lieu of pressure transducers, they shall be selected such that the test pressure is indicated within 20 % and 80 % of the full-scale value.

NOTE Pressure recording devices are outside the scope of ~~9.1.2 9.1.3.1.~~

##### 9.1.1.2 Calibration Procedure

~~Pressure measuring devices shall be calibrated with a master pressure-measuring device or deadweight tester to at least three equidistant points of full scale (excluding zero and full scale as required points of calibration).~~

Pressure measuring devices shall be calibrated with a master pressure-measuring device or deadweight tester to at least three points, which shall be equidistant of full scale. Zero and full scale are not required calibration points, however if they are used, shall be in addition to the three required points.

NOTE If the number of calibration points is  $x$  and the full-scale pressure is  $P_{fs}$ , the intervals between calibration points would be  $P_{fs}/(x + 1)$ . In terms of % of full scale, the intervals between calibration points would be  $(100 \%) / (x + 1)$ .

EXAMPLE 1 For the minimum requirement of three calibration points,  $x = 3$ , and the calibration intervals would be  $(100 \%) / (3 + 1) = (100 \%) / 4 = 25 \%$ . As a result, calibration would be performed at 25 %, 50 %, and 75 % of full scale as a minimum.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**EXAMPLE 2** For a requirement of five calibration points including full scale,  $x = 4$ , because the full-scale calibration is not included in  $x$ . The calibration intervals then would be  $(100\%)/(4 + 1) = (100\%)/5 = 20\%$ . Therefore, calibration would be performed at 20 %, 40 %, 60 %, 80 %, and 100 % of full scale.

### 9.1.1.3 Calibration Intervals

Calibration intervals shall be established based on repeatability and degree of usage.

The initial interval between calibrations shall be a maximum of 90 days until recorded calibration history can be established by the manufacturer. Increases to the interval between calibrations shall be limited to 90-day increments, with a maximum calibration interval between calibrations to not exceed 1 year.

Calibration intervals shall be adjusted based on review of the recorded calibration history and determination of interval adjustments shall be defined in the manufacturer's written procedure.

The calibration interval shall start either on the date of calibration or on the date of first use, not to exceed 3 months from the date of calibration. If the manufacturer elects to start the calibration interval other than on the date of calibration, the date of first use shall be recorded. If the calibration interval is not started within 3 months of the date of calibration, the equipment shall be identified as out of calibration and shall be re-calibrated.

The calibration interval shall start either on the date of calibration or on the date of first use within 90 days of calibration.

If manufacturer chooses to start the calibration interval other than on the date of calibration, the following shall apply:

- the date of first use shall be recorded, and

- the time between the calibration date and date of first use shall not exceed 90 days.

## 9.2 Visual Examination Personnel

Welding, quality control, pressure testing and machining Personnel performing visual inspection for final acceptance shall undergo pass an annual vision examination in conformance with the manufacturer's documented procedures that satisfy the applicable requirements of ASNT SNT- TC-1A or ISO 9712.

**NOTE** Alternative standards are acceptable provided they meet the minimum requirements of ASNT SNT-TC-1A.

## 9.3 Welding Inspectors

Personnel performing visual inspections of welding operations and completed welds shall be qualified and recorded in conformance with the manufacturer's documented procedures.

## 9.4 Visual Inspection

### Visual Inspection of Castings

Visual inspection of all pressure-containing and pressure-controlling steel castings as a minimum shall conform to MSS SP-55. The following acceptance criteria shall apply:

- **Type 1** Type I: none acceptable.
- **Type 2 to 12** Type II to XII: **Category** A and B only.



For cast materials not covered by MSS SP-55, visual inspection and acceptance criteria shall conform to the manufacturer's documented procedures.

### **Visual Inspection of Forgings**

Visual inspection of all pressure-containing and pressure-controlling steel forgings as a minimum shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Div. 1, UF-45, and UF-46. Visible defects such as seams, laps, or folds shall not be allowed.

### **Visual Inspection of Final Machined Parts**

~~For stems or shafts, trunnion or trunnion/bearing plates, closure members and seat rings, in~~ In addition to the requirements of sections 9.4.1 and 9.4.2 the machined areas of pressure-containing and pressure-controlling castings and forgings shall be visually inspected in conformance with the manufacturer's requirements.

For seals, gaskets, seat springs and parts with plating, the parts shall be visually inspected in conformance with the applicable industry material specification.

## **9.5 Age Control and Storage for Nonmetallic Seals**

### **Age Control**

The manufacturer's written requirements for nonmetallic seals shall include the following minimum provisions:

- batch number/traceability;
- cure/mold date;
- shelf life expiration date.

### **Storage**

The manufacturer's written requirements for nonmetallic seals ~~that are not assembled into equipment~~ shall include the following minimum provisions:

- age control
  - indoor storage;
  - maximum temperature not to exceed 120 °F (49 °C);
  - protected from direct natural light;
  - stored unstressed (see text below);
  - stored away from contact with liquids;
  - protected from ozone and radiographic damage.

Packaging and storage of elastomeric seals shall not impose tensile or compressive stresses sufficient to cause permanent deformation or other damage.

NOTE 1 Recommendations are typically available from seal manufacturers.



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

NOTE 2 Where applicable, for a given seal design, rings of large inside diameter and relatively small cross-section may be formed into three equal super imposed loops to avoid creasing or twisting, but it is not possible to achieve this condition by forming just two loops.

## 9.6 Valve Assembly

Valves shall be assembled per written procedures developed by the manufacturer. The procedure shall include bolt tightening requirements for pressure-boundary bolting.

Interfaces between pressure-controlling parts shall be assembled free of any sealant, except where the sealant is the primary means of sealing.

When used for assembly of pressure-controlling parts, the lubricant shall not exceed viscosity range of SAE 10W motor oil or equivalent.

NOTE 1 Other parts, such as threads, bearings, sliding parts, etc. may be lubricated for assembly using an appropriate oil or grease.

NOTE 2 For guidance on restriction of assembly lubricant see L.12 L.13

## 10 Factory Acceptance Testing

### 10.1 Pressure Testing—General

#### Procedure

Written test procedures that identify test methodology, test durations and acceptance criteria shall be developed and maintained for all pressure testing performed in conformance to this specification.

The equipment used to perform the required pressure tests shall not apply external forces that affect seat or body seal leakage. If an end-clamping fixture is used, the valve manufacturer shall demonstrate that the test fixture does not affect the seat or body joint sealing capability of the valve being tested.

Each valve shall be tested in the fully assembled condition to the manufacturer's manufacture's procedures prior to shipment except that the hydrostatic shell test may be carried out in the non-assembled condition for one-piece bodies with no body penetrations.

~~Pressure testing shall be carried out before external coating of the valve.~~

Protective coatings, such as paint, shall not be applied to any surface before inspection or pressure testing.

NOTE 1 Phosphatizing and similar chemical conversion processes used to protect valve surfaces are acceptable even if applied before the tests, provided the coating does not seal off porosity.

If the valve has been previously pressure tested to the requirements of this specification, subsequent repeat hydrostatic and gas testing may be performed without removal of the valve external coating.

~~Testing shall be performed in the sequence as listed in order of 10.3 to 10.4.4 10.4.5. The backseat test that is only applicable to valves per 10.2 shall be performed either immediately before or immediately after the hydrostatic shell test in 10.3.~~

Testing shall be performed in the following order based on the applicable valve configuration:

— Stem Backseat (10.2; see Note 2);

— Hydrostatic Shell (see 10.3);

- Standard (10.3.1)
- Elevated (10.3.2)
- with External Relief (10.3.3)
- with Pipe Pups (10.3.4)
- with Drain, Vent, and Sealant Injection Lines (10.3.5)

— Hydrostatic Seat (see 10.4)

- Standard (10.4.1)
- Check Valves (10.4.2)
- Block Valves (10.4.3)

NOTE 2 When applicable per the requirements of 10.2, the backseat test may be performed either immediately before or immediately after the hydrostatic shell test in 10.3

### **Duration and Acceptance Criteria**

Shell test duration and acceptance criteria shall be based on the end connector size NPS of the valve ends.

Seat test duration and acceptance criteria shall be based on the bore diameter of the closure member. Seat test duration shall be based on the end connector size of the valve.

Seat test duration and acceptance criteria for noncircular opening valves shall be based on the NPS of the valve ends end connector size.

The hydrostatic test fluid shall be water and shall contain a corrosion inhibitor. The chloride content of test water in contact with austenitic and duplex stainless-steel wetted components of valves shall not exceed 30 µg/g (30 ppm by mass). The chloride content in the test water shall be tested at least every 12 months and records shall be maintained in conformance with the documentation requirements of Section 14.

NOTE The hydrostatic test fluid may have antifreeze (glycol) added at the discretion of the manufacturer.

### **Test Conditions**

The hydrostatic test fluid shall be water and shall contain a corrosion inhibitor. The chloride content of test water in contact with austenitic and duplex stainless-steel wetted components of valves shall not exceed 30 µg/g (30 ppm by mass). The chloride content in the test water shall be tested at least every 12 months and records shall be maintained in conformance with the documentation requirements of Section 14.

NOTE The hydrostatic test fluid may have antifreeze (glycol) added at the discretion of the manufacturer.

Valves shall be tested with the seating and sealing surfaces free from sealant except where the sealant is the primary means of sealing. A secondary seat and/or stem packing sealant system, if provided, shall not be used before or during testing.

All hydrostatic and gas shell tests specified shall be:

- performed with the valve unseated and partially open, or
- performed with the valve fully open, provided the body cavity is simultaneously filled and pressurized through a cavity connection.

The supply pressure shall be isolated from the valve during hydrostatic shell testing and shall be stabilized prior to the start of pressure testing duration. The stabilization criteria shall be documented in the manufacturer's pressure testing procedure.

The pressure measuring device shall be installed in the test apparatus in such a manner that the device indicates the test pressure of the valve assembly. The minimum test pressures shall be maintained for the duration of the test and shall be held for the minimum test durations as specified in 10.2, 10.3 or 10.4.

### Leakage

For hydrostatic or gas testing, visible leakage (see 3.1.56 3.1.58) shall be any release of test fluid observed during the pressure test duration hold period. Test fluid released during the seat test pressure build-up or pressure bleed-down shall not be recognized as visible leakage. Visible leakage shall be observed directly, including through a window, or by video equipment.

If video equipment is used in place of direct observation, resolution and brightness shall be maintained to ensure the detection of possible leakage.

## 10.2 Stem Backseat Test

Testing of the backseat shall be performed on valves that have this feature and shall commence with the packing gland loose unless a test port is provided. Self-energized packing or seals shall be removed unless a test port is provided for this test.

The valves shall be filled with the ends closed off and the closure member in the partially open position until leakage of the test fluid around the stem or through the test port is observed. The backseat shall then be closed and a minimum pressure of 1.1 times the pressure rating determined in conformance with 4.3 for material at 100 °F (38 °C) based on the valve end connector material. The test duration shall conform to Table 8 based on the valve end connector size.

**Table 8—Minimum Duration of Stem Backseat Tests**

Valve End Connector Size		Test Duration <sup>a</sup> (minutes)
NPS	DN	
≤ 4	≤ 100	2
≥ 6	≥ 150	5
FOOTNOTE <sup>a</sup> Test duration starts once the valve is stabilized per manufacturer's procedures.		

**Warning—Due to the possibility of ejection of the stem from the valve body under high pressure, appropriate safety precautions must be taken.**

Monitoring for leakage shall be through a test access port or by monitoring leakage around the loosened packing.

There shall be no visible leakage permitted during the backseat stem test.

## 10.3 Hydrostatic Shell Test

## Hydrostatic Shell Test Preparation, Method and Acceptance Criteria

Valve ends shall be blocked, and the closure member placed in any position according to 10.1.3, the partially open position during the test.

When present, relief valves that release to the atmosphere shall be removed and their connection points plugged. Internal non-return valves shall be installed on sealant injection ports without the injection fitting. Injection ports that are equipped with an internal non-return valve shall be tested without the injection fitting installed.

The test pressure for the hydrostatic shell test shall be a minimum of 1.5 times the pressure rating conforming to 4.3 for material at 100 °F (38 °C) based on the valve end connector material. The test duration shall conform to Table 9 based on the valve end connector size.

Table 9—Minimum Duration of Hydrostatic Shell Tests

Valve Size		Test Duration <sup>a</sup> (minutes)
NPS	DN	
≤ 4	≤ 100	2
6 to 10	150 to 250	5
12 to 18	300 to 450	15
20 and larger	500 and larger	30
FOOTNOTE <sup>a</sup> Test duration starts once the valve is stabilized per manufacturer's procedures.		

There shall be no visible leakage permitted during the hydrostatic shell test.

NOTE See Annex J for additional guidance on extended shell test.

### Extended Higher Hydrostatic Shell Test

When the valve has been designed to withstand a higher hydrostatic shell test pressure per 5.5, the shell test pressure shall not be at less than 1.5 times the higher design pressure at 100 °F (38 °C).

When performing a higher hydrostatic shell test and the valve is flanged, the hydrostatic shell test shall be performed with bore sealing plugs that ensure the flanges are not subjected to test pressures greater than 1.5 times the valve flange rating.

The test duration specified in Table 9 shall start after stabilization.

There shall be no visible leakage permitted during the hydrostatic shell test.

NOTE See Annex J for additional guidance on extended shell test.

### Hydrostatic Shell Test with External Relief Valves

After hydrostatic shell testing, external relief valves shall be fitted to valves that have this feature. The connection to the valve body shall be tested at 95 % of the set pressure of the relief valve for 2 minutes for valve sizes up to and including NPS 4 (DN 100) and 5 minutes for valve sizes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger. The relief-valve connection shall be free of visible leakage during this period.

The external relief valves shall be set to relieve at the specified pressure in accordance with 5.5.

### **Hydrostatic Shell Test with Pipe Pups**

Hydrostatic shell test shall be required if pipe pups are to be welded to the valve as part of the final valve assembly by the manufacturer. Test pressure, duration, and acceptance criteria shall conform to 10.3.1

When the allowable test pressure rating of the pipe pup is less than the required hydrostatic test pressure, the valve shall first be hydrostatic tested without the pipe pups welded to the valve. Subsequently, the pipe pups shall be welded to the valve followed by a hydrostatic shell test of the assembly at a lower pressure than the design pressure MAWP specified by agreement. the purchaser.

The test duration specified in Table 9 shall start after stabilization.

There shall be no visible leakage permitted during the hydrostatic shell test with pipe pups.

### **Hydrostatic Test of Drain, Vent, and Sealant Injection Extension Lines**

If provided as part of the final assembly, drain, vent, and sealant injection lines shall be subject to a hydrostatic test with the valve.

If testing with the fully assembled valve is not practical practicable, these lines shall be tested separately at the test pressure in 10.3.1. All extension pipe fittings that are welded connected to the valve assembly shall be subjected to a hydrostatic pressure test in conformance with 10.3.1. Fittings such as pipe plugs or blind flanges that replace test fixture/fitting are not required to be subjected to pressure testing.

## **10.4 Hydrostatic Seat Test**

### **Hydrostatic Seat Test Preparation, Method and Acceptance Criteria**

Lubricants or sealants shall be removed from seats and closure member sealing surfaces except where the lubricant or sealant is the primary means of sealing or if the lubricant complies with the viscosity requirements of Section 9.6.

NOTE See K.14 for guidance on performing alternative hydrostatic seat testing.

The test pressure for all seat tests shall be a minimum of 1.1 times the pressure rating conforming to 4.3 for material at 100 °F (38 °C) based on the valve end connector material. The test duration shall conform to Table 10. based on the valve end connector size.

**Table 10—Minimum Duration of Hydrostatic Seat Tests**

Valve End Connector Size		Test Duration <sup>a</sup> (minutes)
NPS	DN	
≤ 4	≤ 100	2
6 to 18	150 to 450	5
20 and larger	500 and larger	10
FOOTNOTE		
<sup>a</sup> Test duration starts once the valve is stabilized per manufacturer's procedures.		

Seat leakage shall be monitored from the downstream side of the seat when under hydrostatic seat test.

The acceptance criteria for leakage shall be as follows:

- For soft-seated valves and lubricated plug valves: leakage shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate A (no visible leakage for the duration of the test at test pressure).
- For metal-seated valves, other than check valves: leakage shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate C.
- NOTE The test procedures for various types of block valve are specified in 10.4.3.
- For metal-seated check valves: leakage shall not exceed ISO 5208, ~~Rate E~~ Rate G.

On completion of hydrostatic seat testing, parts such as drain plugs, injection fittings, and cavity-relief valves, shall be fitted in conformance with the manufacturer's documented procedures.

### **Hydrostatic Seat Test—Check Valves**

The hydrostatic seat test pressure for check valves shall be applied from the downstream direction of the required flow blockage.

### **Hydrostatic Seat Test—Axial On-Off, Ball, Gate and Plug Block Valves**

#### **10.4.1.1 Unidirectional Valve**

With the valve half-open, the valve and its cavity shall be entirely filled with test fluid. The valve shall then be closed, and the test pressure applied to the appropriate end of the valve.

~~Leakage from the upstream seat shall be monitored via the valve body cavity vent or drain connection, where provided. For valves without a body cavity vent or drain connection or (Sort Key 69) for downstream seated valves, seat leakage shall be monitored at the respective downstream end of the valve (i.e., the valve end downstream of the pressurized test fluid).~~

Leakage shall be monitored at the downstream side of the tested seat i.e. via the valve body cavity in case of an upstream seated valve or via the downstream side of the valve in case of a downstream seated valve.

#### **10.4.1.2 Bidirectional Valve**

With the valve half-open, the valve and its cavity shall be entirely filled with test fluid. The valve shall then be closed, and the test pressure applied ~~successively~~ sequentially to both ends of the valve.

Leakage shall be monitored at the downstream side of the tested seat i.e. via the valve body cavity in case of an upstream seated valve or via the downstream side of the valve in case of a downstream seated valve.

~~Seat leakage shall be monitored from each seat via the valve body cavity vent or drain connection, where provided. For valves without a body cavity vent or drain connection or for downstream seated valves, seat leakage shall be monitored from the respective downstream end of the valve.~~

### **Additional Seat Testing**

If the purchaser specifies the functionality for the valve to be that of double block and bleed (DBB) valves, the test described in L.14 shall be performed.

If the purchaser specifies the functionality for the valve to be that of double isolation and bleed (DIB-1), both seats bidirectional, the test described in L.15 and L.18 shall be performed.

If the purchaser specifies the functionality for the valve to be that of DIB-2, one seat unidirectional and one seat bidirectional, the test described in L.16 and L.18 shall be performed.

## 10.5 Hydrostatic Test - Certification of Cavity Relief Valve

If provided, the cavity relief valve (to the atmosphere) shall have the pressure set, tested, and certified to relieve to atmospheric pressure at the specified pressure by the relief-valve supplier or by the valve manufacturer.

The set pressure of relief valves shall be between 1.1 and 1.33 times the valve pressure rating conforming to 4.3 for material at 250°F (121°C). The reseal pressure shall not be less than 1.05 times the valve pressure rating conforming to 4.3 for material at 250°F (121°C). The manufacturer shall specify the set pressure of relief valves for temperatures above 250°F (121°C).

## 11 Coating/Painting

All non-corrosion-resistant valves shall be coated or painted externally in conformance with the manufacturer's document requirements.

NOTE 1 See Section 13 on corrosion protection for details.

NOTE 2 See L.20 for requirements for coating of corrosion resistant valves.

**CAUTION—When external coating or painting operations are performed, preventative measures are to be taken to ensure that no foreign material enters the internal cavity of the valve that may impact the valve function.**

Flange face, actuator or gearbox mounting flange sealing surfaces, and weld bevel ends shall not be coated.

~~The coating requirements of Annex G for both flange and weld end connectors that shall be applied after all testing is completed.~~

Coating shall conform to Annex G for both flange and weld end connectors.

## 12 Marking

### 12.1 General

Valve body marking shall conform to the requirements of Table 11.

Table 11—Valve Marking on Body

Marking	Section	Format Example
---------	---------	----------------



Manufacturer's Name *, ***		—	Per Manufacturer Requirements
Unique Serial Number **		14.1	Per Manufacturer Requirements
Trademark or Brand name Marks (optional) *, ***		—	Per Manufacturer Requirements
Pressure Class or Intermediate Pressure Rating (as applicable) **		4.3.1	150, 300, 600, 900, 1500 or 2500
Intermediate Pressure Rating **		4.3.2	PN155, 2250 psi
Body/closure/end-connector material designation ** a b c		6	Material Grade
Body/closure/end-connector melt identification e a b		—	Cast or Heat Number
Nominal valve size *, ****	Full-opening valves: nominal valve size	4.4 or 4.5.2	8 or DN 200
	Reduced-opening valves with circular opening: ****	4.5.1	8 x 6 or DN 200 x 150 or
	Non-standard circular reduced opening valves	4.5.2 4.5.3	8R x bore or DN 200R x bore 8R (DN200R)
SMYS (units) of valve ends, as applicable d c		5.1	SMYS 40 KSI or SMYS 276 MPa
Ring joint groove number e e d		—	R49
Flow direction (for check valves only)		4.1.4	Flow → or ← Flow
<b>FOOTNOTES</b> * Shall be on <u>either</u> the Body or the Nameplate, as a minimum minimally. May be on both. ** Shall be on <u>both</u> the Body and the Nameplate *** When Trademark/Brand names are optional used, the Manufacturer's Name shall be included **** Bore may be marked in in. or (mm) "—" No specific document reference identified a) When the body is manufactured from more than one type of material, all materials of the body and end-connector shall be identified -MSS SP-25 gives guidance on marking b) Body includes body/closure/end connector c) On body weld ends only. d) On flange OD			

Other valve marking shall conform to Table 12, as applicable.

Body, closure/end connector, and cover/bonnet marking shall be performed using a low-stress die-stamp (rounded "V" or dot face type) or cast.

The marking on the body, end connector, bonnet/cover and nameplate shall be visually legible.

For valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger, the marking on the body, closure/end connector and bonnet/cover shall be not less than 0.25 in. (6 mm).

**Table 12—Other Valve Marking**



Marking	Format	Location
Body/closure/end connector material designation <sup>a-b</sup>	(see Body Marking Requirements)	On both body / closure / end connector and nameplate
Body/closure/end connector melt identification	(see Body Marking Requirements)	On both body/closure/end connector only
Bonnet/cover material designation <sup>b</sup> (see Section 6)	Material Grade	On bonnet/cover
Bonnet/cover melt identification (cast or heat number)	A516-70/12345	On bonnet/cover
Seat sealing direction valves with preferred direction.	(see Figure 5)	On separate identification plate affixed to valve body or bonnet/cover or closure/end connector
Pipe Pup heat treatment condition (see section 5.2.3.2)	-	On the pipe
Safe Working Limit (SWL) of lifting points.	Per Manufacturer Requirements	Per Manufacturer Requirements
<p>FOOTNOTE</p> <p>a) When the body is manufactured from more than one type of material, all materials of the body and end-connector shall be identified</p> <p>b) Where the grade and class does not uniquely identify the material specification, the material specification, grade, and class shall be marked. Example: A516-70 or A537 CL2, etc.</p>		

## 12.2 Valve Size Marking

Except for reduced-opening valves, valve sizes shall be marked with the nominal pipe size (NPS) or nominal diameter (DN).

When there are no minimum bore dimensions listed for a valve pressure class and size stated in Table 1, the size and bore shall be by agreement and the manufacture shall stamp the size and bore on the nameplate.

Reduced-opening valves with a circular opening shall be marked with the nominal size of the end connectors and the nominal size of the reduced opening in conformance with Table 1 or marked with the nominal size followed by "R" and the actual bore.

EXAMPLE 1 An NPS 16 (DN 400) Class 150 valve with a reduced 11.94 11.93 in. (303 mm) diameter circular opening shall be specified as NPS 16 (DN 400) x NPS 12 (DN 300).

EXAMPLE 2 An NPS 16 (DN 400) Class 150 valve with an actual bore 14.75 in. (375 mm) diameter circular opening shall be specified as NPS 16R (DN 400R) x 14.75 in (375 mm).

Reduced-opening valves with a noncircular opening and other valves per 4.4.3 4.5.2 shall be marked with the nominal size in conformance with Table 1 corresponding to the end connectors followed by the letter "R."

EXAMPLE 3 Reduced-bore valve with NPS 16 (DN 400) end connector and a 15 in. x 12 in. (381 mm x 305 mm) rectangular opening shall be specified as 16R.

## 12.3 Nameplate

Valve nameplate marking shall conform to the requirements of Table 13.

Each valve shall be provided with an austenitic stainless-steel nameplate securely affixed and so located that it is accessible.

The nameplate for valves larger than NPS 4 (DN 100) shall be securely affixed to the valve body; however, based on valve design the nameplate may be attached to the bonnet/cover or end connector at the option of the manufacturer.

The maximum allowable **operating working** pressure at the minimum and maximum **operating** temperatures, including restrictions of temperature (such as limitations imposed by nonmetallic parts), shall be marked on the nameplate.

For valves, NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller, then nameplate shall be securely affixed to the valve body or attached to the valve with braided stainless-steel wire.

The nameplate minimum letter size shall be 0.125 in (3 mm) on valve sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.

For valves less than NPS 2 (DN 50) the nameplate letter size shall be per the manufacturer's standard.

**Table 13—Valve Marking on Nameplate**

Marking	Section	Format <b>Example</b>
Manufacturer's Name *, ***	—	Per Manufacturer requirements
Specification	—	"6D" or "API 6D"
Unique Serial Number **	14.1	Per Manufacturer Requirements
Date of Manufacture	—	MM-YY (e.g. 05-18 is for May 2018)
Manufacturer's Trademark or Mark (optional) * Trademark or Brand name Marks (optional) ***	—	Per Manufacturer Requirements
Manufacturer City/country	12.3	Gouda/ NL
Pressure Class or Intermediate Pressure Rating (as applicable) **	4.3.1	150, 300, 600, 900, 1500 or 2500 Examples: 150, 300, 600, 900, etc.
Intermediate Pressure Rating	4.3.2	PN155, 2250 psi
Pressure-temperature Rating: a) maximum allowable <b>operating working</b> pressure at maximum <b>operating</b> temperature and b) maximum allowable <b>operating working</b> pressure at minimum <b>operating</b> temperature	4.3	1478 psi at 250 °F; 10.2 MPa or 102 bar at 121 °C 1500 psi at -20 °F; 10.4 MPa or 104 bar at -29 °C
Design code for pressure-containing parts and pressure-boundary bolting	5.4	ASME Sec. VIII, Div. 1
Code Used for Pressure-temperature Rating	4.3	ASME B16.34
Face-to-face/end-to-end dimensions, if not shown in or does not conform to Table C.1 to Table C.6	5.2	11.26 in. or 286 mm
Body/closure/end connector material designation * a	6	Material Grade

Trim identification <sup>b</sup> : material grade symbols indicating metallic materials for: stem, sealing faces of closure members, non-metallic seat to closure member seal materials		6	Stem 13Cr; Disc 13Cr; Seat 13Cr/PEEK; Seals FKM
Nominal valve size ** a) full-opening valves: nominal valve size b) reduced-opening valves:		4.4	8 or DN 200 or 8 × 6 DN 200 × 150 or 8R or DN 200R
Nominal valve size **	Full-opening valves: nominal valve size	4.5.1	8 or DN 200
	Reduced-opening valves: ****	4.5.2	8 × 6 or DN 200 × 150 or 8R x bore or DN 200R x bore
	Non-standard opening valves	4.5.3	8R (DN200R)
Supplemental Double Block or Isolation Tests (if applicable)		L.6, L.7 or L.8 L.14, L.15 or L.16	DBB, DIB-1, or DIB-2
QSL level (as applicable), when specified by purchaser		Annex I	QSL2, QSL3, QSL3G, QSL4 or QSL4G
FOOTNOTES			
* Shall be on <u>either</u> the Body or the Nameplate, as a minimum minimally. May be on both.			
** Shall be on <u>both</u> the Body and the Nameplate			
*** When Trademark/Brand names are optional used, the Manufacturer's Name shall be included. Sort Key 103			
"—" No specific document reference identified			
a) When the body is manufactured from more than one type of material, all materials of the body and end connector shall be identified			
b) MSS SP-25 gives guidance on marking			

**NOTE** When requested by the purchaser, valves for below grade (ground level), service a duplicate austenitic stainless steel nameplate may be provided and be securely affixed and so located that it is accessible.

For non-standard valves, the nominal size and face-to-face or end-to-end dimensions shall be stated on the nameplate when not specified in Annex C or do not conform to Annex C. See 5.2.2.

The manufacturer's name including (city/country) shall be as defined in 3.1.22. No other names shall be permitted on the nameplate.

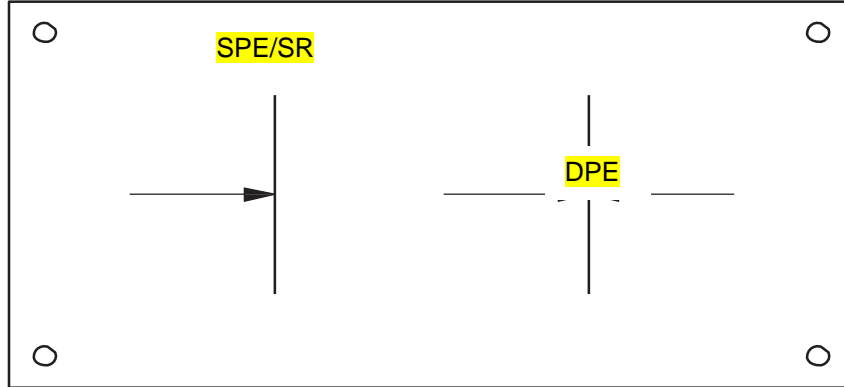
**NOTE** Application of Brand name /Trademarks are permitted as an option.

## 12.4 Supplemental Requirements

Omission of the body markings shall be permitted when the valve size or shape limits the application of all required marking. Allowable marking omissions shall be one of the following:

- marking of the size, or
- marking of the size and class rating

For valves with one unidirectional seat and one bidirectional seat, the directions of both seats shall be specified on a separate identification plate as illustrated in Figure 5, and each flange/weld-end shall be marked / stamped with 'SPE/SR' on the side that contains a single piston effect seat and with 'DPE' on the side that contains a double piston effect seat.



**Figure 5—Typical Identification Plate for a Valve with One Seat Unidirectional and One Seat Bidirectional**

NOTE In Figure 5, one symbol indicates the bidirectional seat and the other symbol indicates the unidirectional seat.

## **13 Draining, Corrosion Protection and Preparation for Transport**

### **13.1 Draining**

Upon completion of all factory acceptance testing, valves shall be drained of test fluids, dried, and where applicable, lubricated before shipment.

### **13.2 Corrosion Protection**

The manufacturer shall have written procedures to address the following:

- a) Corrosion protection using the manufacturer's documented requirements on bare metallic machined surfaces such as flange faces, weld bevel ends, exposed stems, and internal surfaces of the equipment
- b) Corrosion protection applied to exposed metallic surfaces of steels with less than 15% chromium on flange faces, weld bevel ends, exposed stems, and all accessible internal surfaces of the equipment.
- c) Corrosion protection provided by a corrosion inhibitor having a runoff temperature of minimum 200°F (93°C)

NOTE Applying corrosion inhibitor on a stem and not removing it prior to operating the valve can damage stem seals.

- d) Valve end connector shall be covered or plugged to protect the sealing surfaces, threads, weld-ends and valve internals from damage.
- e) Cover/plug shall be securely affixed to the valve.
- f) The design of the covers shall prevent the valves from being installed unless the covers have been removed.

#### **Covers**

The design of the covers shall prevent the valves from being installed unless the covers have been removed.

### **13.3 Additional Requirements**

The manufacturer shall have written procedures to address the following additional requirements:

~~— End cover protection for flange faces and weld bevel ends~~

- a) Closure member position for transport
- b) Short-term and long-term storage, when applicable

## 14 Documentation

### 14.1 Minimum Documentation and Retention

The documentation listed below shall be maintained by the manufacturer for a minimum of 10 years following the date of manufacture (see 3.1.xx):

- design documentation;
- weld procedure specification (WPS)
- weld procedure qualification record (PQR)
- NDE records [for radiographic testing (RT), minimum NDE records are reader sheets and technique sheet] or surface NDE (MT or PT) or Ultrasonic testing] when performed per Annex I
- Visual inspection records of castings (see 9.4.1)
- chloride content in the hydrostatic test water (see 10.1.2)
- valve assembly serial number traceable to with the following associated information:
  - 1) material test report for body, bonnet/cover, stem and end connector/closure and additional related requirements of Annex I, when applicable
  - 2) pressure test results (including hydrostatic and or gas) and additional related requirements of Annex I when applicable.
  - 3) for sour service valves, certificate of conformance to NACE MR0175/ ISO 15156

NOTE Purchaser or regulatory requirements can specify additional records or a longer record retention period.

The documentation shall be provided maintained by the manufacturer in legible, retrievable, and reproducible form and free of damage.

### 14.2 Documentation Provided with the Valve

#### General

The manufacturer shall supply documentation to the purchaser if the valve is provided with a pressure balance hole in the closure member.

For valves weighing greater than 55lbs (25kg), the manufacturer shall provide lifting sketches and handling instructions (see 5.9) for safe lifting operations.

The manufacturer shall identify the allowable valve orientation in the installation, operation, and maintenance

instructions.

### **Certificate of Conformance**

The manufacturer shall supply a certificate of conformance to this specification.

The certificate shall identify the following:

- 1) valve type
- 2) size
- 3) pressure class
- 4) end connector
- 5) serial number(s)
- 6) additional requirements specified by the manufacturer or purchaser in Annex F, Annex I, Annex J, Annex K and Annex L, as applicable
- 7) ~~for eligible valves,~~ a statement that the valve ~~(s)~~ is/are in full conformance with this product specification edition and addenda on the date of manufacture.
- 8) design code for pressure-containing parts and pressure-boundary bolting. see 5.1.1
- 9) code used for Pressure–Temperature Rating. See 4.3

## Annex A

(informative)

### Repair or Remanufacture of Valves

#### A.1 Requirements

This annex defines the requirements for repair or remanufacture of ~~steel ball, check, gate, and plug~~ valves ~~normally used in pipeline applications~~, originally manufactured in accordance with this specification, which shall be applied when specified by the manufacturer or purchaser.

The requirements of this specification that address design, materials, quality control, welding, NDE, pressure testing, marking and records shall apply.

This annex ~~is shall~~ not ~~be~~ applicable to:

- ~~valves damaged by fire,~~
- ~~or to~~ field repair ~~(with or without the replacement of parts)~~ and modification of equipment
- ~~and is not applicable to repair or remanufacture of~~ used or surplus equipment intended for resale.

~~Valves exposed to fire shall not be repaired or remanufactured.~~

The definitions of remanufacturer (see 3.1.40) and repairer (see 3.1.41) shall only apply to this annex.

~~Remanufacture shall not include replacement of the body.~~

~~Repair shall not include machining, welding, heat-treating, other manufacturing operations, or replacement of bodies.~~

**WARNING** Valves may contain pressurized fluid and/or residual hazardous fluid, and/or stored energy. Operating the valve can lead to release of product, potentially under pressure.

NOTE Additional requirements may apply by agreement.

#### A.2 Preparation of Valves for Shipment to the Repairer/Remanufacturer

##### A.2.1 General

All the activities listed in A.2.2 shall be performed prior to shipment to the repairer/remanufacturer.

~~The repairer/remanufacturer shall verify that activities listed in A.2.2 are completed upon receipt.~~

##### A.2.2 Valves Not Requiring Failure Investigation and Analysis

The repairer/remanufacturer shall ensure ~~that the~~ following activities have been completed:

- Pressure removed from the valve cavities and accompanying actuators, tanks, etc.

- Hazardous materials removed and cleaned from the valve and accompanying equipment. Copy of the safety data sheet (SDS) to be provided for the valve service media and if applicable for hydraulic fluid. Valves checked for Naturally Occurring Radioactive Material (NORM) in accordance with the applicable local regulations (region/state/country/ province). Confirmation of the extent of cleanliness and cleaning to be provided.
- Flanged and weld ends blanked off to protect gasket face, weld ends and valve internals during shipment.
- Block valves to be stroked in order to drain the cavities and left in the full open condition for shipment, unless fail to close.
- Seized or non-operational valves are tagged accordingly, and the cavity drained or vented as far as practicable by other means, e.g. body vents.
- If removal of actuator is necessary, its installed orientation documented.
- Fail-safe Hydraulic and pneumatic actuators removed shipped in a fail-safe, depressurized and de-energized condition.

NOTE For valves that are inoperable, seized, or jammed, special procedures may be required for the safe removal of actuator.

- ~~Plug, ball, and reverse acting through-conduit gate valves shipped in the fully open position, unless fitted with a fail to close spring assist actuator.~~
- Check valves shipped with the disc supported or secured during transit
- ~~Valves checked for Naturally Occurring Radioactive Material (NORM) in accordance with the applicable local regulations (region/state/country/ province).~~
- Lifting equipment on the valve including lifting lugs, brackets, tapped holes for lifting brackets subject to a visual inspection prior to handling to identify damaged components.
- Valves inspected for preexisting damage.
- Record operation problems, functionality defects, and reason for valve repair if known.

### A.2.3 Valves Requiring Failure Investigation and Analysis

In addition to A.2.2, valves requiring failure investigation and analysis, the repairer/remanufacturer shall ensure that the following additional activities have been completed:

- Valve is untouched from service in the field, other than removing pressure and draining down process fluids.
- Installed location and orientation is to be clearly marked on the valve (e.g., plant/platform side and pipeline side, downstream and upstream, DPE and SPE seats).
- Care taken to ensure evidence is not tampered with or otherwise negatively impacted while cleaning valve.
- Photos of the valve, required as follows:



- a) Before removal from the line, and include installation positioning including actuation device, auxiliary piping, and instrumentation.
- b) As removed (internal and external) before any cleaning.
- c) As prepared for shipment.

### A.3 Receiving Activities

#### A.3.1 Receiving Activities for Valves Not Requiring Failure Investigation and Analysis

The valve shall be traceable to the owner. Each valve shall be assigned a unique identifier (see A.4.1.2).

A preliminary visual inspection shall be conducted per Table A.1. The owner shall be notified if the valve cannot be remanufactured or repaired. All actions to be completed per Table A.1 shall be documented.

**Table A.1—Initial Inspection**

Item	Action to be Completed
<b>Initial Inspection</b>	
Nameplate(s) and all body marks stamps	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take note of all markings, and particularly look for identify any markings that could indicate a remanufactured or repaired valve</li> </ul>
External condition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stains or other signs of leakage from main body or body joints</li> <li>Paint or coating condition for damage</li> <li>Cracks in paint or coating near or at joints</li> <li>General staining on body, which would clearly indicate the valve location/orientation</li> <li>Coating on bolts/nuts.</li> <li>Any damage could indicate previous repair.</li> <li>Bolting corrosion</li> <li>Body fittings for corrosion</li> <li>Signs of gearbox/ actuator moving on body</li> <li>Any recent adjustments of gearbox/actuator stops</li> <li>Look for identify paint or coating damage</li> </ul>
<b>Marking</b>	
Match mark all components	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allow for re-assembly in identical orientation</li> <li>Tag each fitting</li> </ul>
<b>Valve Operability, If Applicable</b>	
Gearbox/lever valves	Look for:
Operate valve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Any movement of the flange joints</li> <li>Any grittiness in operation</li> <li>Excessive backlash/free movement</li> <li>Evidence of sand and debris in the valve</li> <li>Surface of the exposed part of the sealing member as the valve is moved - photograph</li> <li>Excessive force required to operate the valve</li> </ul>

#### A.3.2 Receiving Activities for Valves Requiring Failure Investigation and Analysis

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

In addition to A.3.1, valves requiring failure investigation, the repairer/remanufacturer shall ensure that the following additional activities have been completed.

- Photograph valve as identified in Table A.2, as a minimum minimally.
- Confirm if witness inspection or pre-disassembly pressure test is required.

**Table A.2—Items for Photographic Inspection**

Items
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. General side views, both sides</li><li>2. End view, both ends</li><li>3. Bolting especially if bolting shows signs of damage</li><li>4. All fittings</li><li>5. Any breaks in coating near joints Cracks in paint or coating near or at joints.</li><li>6. Nameplates and other body markings</li><li>7. Any damage or other areas of concern</li><li>8. Actuator/gearbox/lever position</li><li>9. Stem position with gearbox/actuator removed—If provided, document the position of the key check key is to be in line with bore for open and is to be across the bore for closed</li></ol>
<b>FOOTNOTE</b> Table A.2 may be used as a template for completing the activities in A.3.2.

## **A.4 Disassembly and Cleaning of Valves**

### **~~A.4.1 Disassembly and Cleaning Activities—Failure Investigation/analysis Not Required~~**

#### **A.4.1.1 Disassembly and Cleaning**

Valves to be remanufactured/repared shall be completely disassembled. During disassembly, visual condition of the body, closure, trim components, bolting and other components shall be recorded to establish the scope of remanufacture/repair.

Packing, gaskets, and non-metallic parts shall be removed and disposed of in accordance with the owner's instructions or appropriate safety procedures.

**NOTE 1** Valves may contain packings, sheet gaskets, and spiral wound gaskets that may contain hazardous material which may require special disposal processes.

Valve parts shall be cleaned. Finished surfaces that may be damaged during cleaning shall be protected.

**NOTE 2** Valves that may undergo simple repair (e.g., seal replacement) do not need to have paint or coating removed prior to pressure test.

#### **A.4.1.2 Identifier/traceability**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

The original equipment manufacturer (OEM) nameplate/tags/serial number shall not be removed. Nameplates/tags from previous repair or remanufacture activities shall be removed and retained or a scan or a photograph of the tag shall be retained in the document files. A new identifier number shall be applied.

NOTE 1 The Identifier may be a serial number as discussed in Section 12.

NOTE 2 Tags may be electronically scanned, or the information recorded and kept in the repair or remanufacture document files.

Finished surfaces that may be damaged shall be protected. Identification numbers marked on parts shall remain on the parts throughout the remanufacturing or repairing process.

NOTE 2 3 Smaller parts may be placed in a container labeled with the unique identification number.

Joints and matching parts shall be match marked, stamped, or doweled to ensure valve is re-assembled in identical to removed condition.

Marking/labeling shall be of a type and material that resists damage, fading, or loss, consistent with the expected storage period.

#### **A.4.2 Disassembly and Cleaning Activities—Failure Investigation/analysis Required**

In addition to the requirements of A.4.1, valves requiring failure investigation and analysis shall be disassembled and evaluated to capture additional evidence applicable to the investigation.

Elastomeric seals shall be protected from further degradation and stored if needed for investigation.

NOTE Table A.3 may shall be used as a template for completing the activities in A.4.2 for ball valves and can be used as a guide template for other valve types. When used for other valve types, the repairer/remanufacturer shall include additional items applicable to the valve type. All actions to be completed per the template shall be documented.

**Table A.3—Template for Disassembly of Ball Valve with Through Leakage**

Item	Action to be Completed
<b>Follow OEM's Sequence of Dismantling</b>	
Body fittings	Remove and check for corrosion in ports, bad threads, blocked ports; store.
<b>WARNING Locked Pressure may Exist under Fitting</b>	
Injectors	Remove and check for grease in ports - take sample.
Gearbox/lever	Remove and check if valve is on open stop.
Stem	With TDI, check any side to side movement in two directions, with hand pressure on stem; record values.
Cap screws	Remove and secure adapter plate using torque wrench; record torque. (4)
Dowels	Remove and check for any clearance.

Item	Action to be Completed
Bonnet and body	Match/marked bonnet with body, and stem key orientation is noted/photographed.
Stem and bonnet	Remove using <b>hole hole</b> in stem as lift point; if no hole in stem, secure stem to bonnet before removing bonnet to prevent the stem from falling out of bonnet.
Stem bore	Check for debris, sand and any foreign material.
Bonnet seals (before removal)	Check for height of O-ring above carrier/bonnet, effectiveness of anti-extrusion rings.
Bonnet seals (after removal from bonnet)	Check for extrusion, explosive decompression, damage to anti extrusion rings, nibbling, seal hardness, compression set (flat sides). Photograph in situ and when removed. If extruded, note position of extrusion.
Stem bore	Measure and check the quality of the bore for body distortion.
Stem	Repeat check with TDI for side-to-side movement; record movement.
Remove stem from bonnet	Check for tightness.
Inspect all parts	Check for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Extrusion of seals, damage to bearings, damage to anti extrusion rings, function of anti-static components;</li> <li>– Stem surface finish/plating breakdown;</li> <li>– Damage to keyways.</li> </ul>
Ball	Replace stem drive on ball; look for any backlash/movement.
<b>Turn Valve-to-bore Upwards, Upper Seat on Leaking Side of Valve, If Identified</b>	
Body bolts	<del>Slacken, measure and</del> record <b>location of any loose bolting torque</b> .  If torque values are required, all coating shall be removed prior to measuring the torque.
<b>Ensure All Removed Components are Matched/marked during Disassembly. The First Removed End Connector and Corresponding Side of the Body to be Matched Marked as Side A</b>	
Adapter and seat rings assembly	Remove; studs and nuts may be removed with the adapter.
<b>Bolts Bolting</b>	Remove one at a time, check for straightness and for any bolt bending in a specific quadrant of the valve.
O-ring seals on adapter with seals still in place.	Check any swelling or seal coming out of the groove (see above - bonnet seals), photograph.
Seals	Remove and inspect (see above - bonnet seals), photograph.

Item	Action to be Completed
Measure any gap between the seat retaining screws and seat - both sides. If no screws measure height of seat above adapter 4 places at 90 degrees.	Difference side-to-side and/or springs supporting seat ring not pushing the seat ring hard up onto the securing screws. Can be indicator <del>to see</del> seat stuck in seat pocket.
Surface of seat	Check for grease.
Sealing surface of seat	Check for gaps/breaks and scuffs, sand impregnation, splaying  For <del>Viton</del> fluorocarbon and nitrile seating valves, identify where any gaps are, and refer to location of the vent holes in the seat  Identify orientation versus valve position in service: bottom, top break open point, reseal point.
Seat area	Photograph.
Seat ring	Mark for orientation relative to top/bottom trunnion.
Seat securing screws	Remove.
Seat ring assembly	Remove with pry bar (or similar) and check for any tightness or jamming.
O-ring in place	Inspect O-ring (see bonnet seals above).
O-ring removed	Inspect O-ring (see bonnet seals above).  If extrusion, ensure direction noted.
End of bearing plates and dowels	Inspect - corrosion can indicate the bearing plates have not been in hard contact with the adapter.
Bearing plates, ball location	Mark with reference.
Bearing plates and ball	Remove.
Ball	Mark for side A/B (clockwise to close from above).
Ball sealing line in closed.	Inspect for misalignment. Determine if under- or over-travel is present.  <del>Check for poor alignment. Establish if under- or over travel.</del>
Ball sealing area	Check for damage and scrapes <del>Check to see if tram lines,</del> particularly in the lower part of the valve <del>are</del> indicative of damage by debris sand.
Body	Remove; once removed, match mark all components to the corresponding seat and end connector side. The other (second) side of the valve is marked with Side B.

## A.5 Evaluation of Components

### **A.5.1 Minimum Requirements for Evaluation and Repair/Remanufacturer of Parts**

Components involved in the valve repair/remanufacture shall be inspected and evaluated (visual and dimensional inspection) in accordance with documented procedures (see Table A.4 as a template).

**Table A.4—Template for Requirements for Evaluation of Components**

<b>Inspection</b>	<b>Acceptance</b>	<b>When Acceptance Not Satisfied - Potential Repair Guidance</b>
<b>Surfaces, Weld and Screw Threads</b>		
General	No damage or deterioration of parts	Report immediately to purchaser for action. Repair to be agreed.
Cracks and linear types of defects including forging laps	Defects may be removed by grinding providing minimum wall thickness and removal limitations are respected.  Otherwise item cannot be reused.	Not permitted. No repair/remanufacture permitted.
Corrosion/erosion visual	Per repairer/remanufacturer or purchaser requirements.  For valves in compliance with ASME B16.34 wall thickness, the dimensions shall not be less than those found in ASME B16.34 Table 3-A or 3-B.  No local material loss greater than 0.078 in (2 mm).  Per repairer/remanufacturer or purchaser requirements For B16.34 valves, not less than the dimensions in B16.34 Table 3-A or 3-B.  No material loss greater than 2 mm.	Weld repair permitted.

Sealing areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Zero indications No visible damage</li> <li>— No corrosion pits.</li> <li>— Surface finish for O-rings per repairer/remanufacturer or purchaser requirements. (See ISO 3601-2 for guidance).</li> <li>— Surface finish for lip seals shall be smoother than 8 <math>\mu</math>-in (0.2 <math>\mu</math>m) for gas service and 16 <math>\mu</math>-in (0.4 <math>\mu</math>m) for liquid service.</li> <li>— For conventional packing, surface finish in static area shall be 18 <math>\mu</math>-in (0.45 <math>\mu</math>m) 4.5 <math>\mu</math>m or smoother, Geometry still within extrusion gap limits for seals as specified by seal OEM.</li> </ul>	<p>Repair by replace component, welding and/or machining.</p> <p>NOTE 1 Corrosion resistant overlay may be used to improve corrosion resistance of carbon and low alloy steels.</p> <p>Corrosion resistant overlay shall is not be considered as part of the valve wall thickness.</p>
Flanged ends	<p>See 5.2.3</p> <p>B16.5 for finish and thickness, and ASME PCC-1 for tolerance/flatness.</p>	<p>Skim face if thickness of flange and face-to-face dimensions will remain in tolerance. Otherwise perform weld repair and re-machine.</p>
<p>Hubbed ends</p> <p>NOTE Some hub designs use special materials in order to meet the pressure temperature ratings. Select weld procedures accordingly</p>	<p>Per repairer/remanufacturer or purchaser requirements</p> <p>OEM data / source</p>	<p>Skim face if thickness of flange and face-to-face dimensions will remain in tolerance. Otherwise perform weld repair and re-machine.</p>
<p>Tapped bolt/stud holes</p> <p>Helicoiled threads should be subjected to a pull-out test using a tensioner or similar</p> <p>Tapped/threaded holes which have been repaired by a wire-insert thread repair kit, shall be subjected to a pull-out test using a tensioner or similar.</p>	<p>No chipped, damaged, pulled threads or sheared off studs. Check with go/no-go gauge.</p>	<p>Re-cut threads, drill, and re-tap any broken studs.</p> <p>NOTE Helicoil Wire-insert thread repair may be used subject to agreement by purchaser.</p>
Tapped NPT fittings	Go/no-go gauge plus visual inspection.	Drill deeper, with counterbore, or weld repair and re-cut, or machine oversize.

<p>Casting linear defects, porosity, surface breaking defects</p> <p>NOTE Through wall defects resulting in leakage require re-heat treatment after weld repair. If the valve distorts during heat treatment it can become unusable.</p>	<p>See 9.4.1 Section 7 In accordance with B46.34 or ASME VIII Div. 1.</p>	<p>Excavate and if still within design thickness grind smooth and perform surface inspection surface inspect.</p> <p>If under thickness, weld repair, followed by surface inspection.</p>
<p>Forging laps and other defects</p>	<p>See 9.4.2 Section 7 In accordance with B46.34 or ASME VIII Div. 1.</p>	<p>Excavate and if still within design thickness, clean up appropriately by grinding and perform surface inspection.</p> <p>If under thickness, approval to leave as-is or repair by welding shall be subject to agreement by purchaser.</p>
<p>Other machined areas</p>	<p>Geometry retains the original design intent (if known)</p>	<p>Oversize, and/or weld repair.</p>
<p>Dimensional checks for ovality in body bore and stem bore, particularly 3-piece ball valves</p> <p>NOTE Some ovality can be acceptable if a) the valve is behaving elastically, b) the seal extrusion gaps are not compromised.</p>	<p>Check for applicable circularity in both stem bore, and body bore, to within 0.004 in. (0.1mm)</p> <p>NOTE Some ovality can be acceptable if a) the valve is behaving elastically, b) the seal extrusion gaps are not compromised.</p>	<p>Report results of ovality to purchaser.</p> <p>No further work unless otherwise agreed.</p>
<p><b>Stem/Shaft Straightness</b></p>		
<p><b>Straightness General</b></p>	<p>Check for operational restrictions.</p> <p>A general guideline is 0.001 in. per inch of length or 0.001 mm per mm 0.001 in/in (0.001 mm/mm) of length.</p>	<p>Replace.</p>
<p>Surface finish in sealing area</p>	<p>Per repairer/remanufacturer or purchaser requirements.</p> <p>Dynamic area is 32 µ-in (0.8 µm).</p>	<p>For valves with adjustable packing diameter may be reduced by up to 0.010 in (0.25 mm).</p> <p>For non-adjustable packing, stem shall be replaced.</p>
<p>Check for twist quarter-turn valves.</p>	<p>Check keyway for signs of deformation.</p>	<p>Replace stem and keys</p>



Thread profile rising stem  Inspect thread profile in rising stem valves.	Free but snug running of drive nut. Thread profile gauge.	Clean up thread or replace
Tee nut on gate valve, stem drive on ball valve	Good fit without wear and slack.	Replace worn part
Tee nut connection to stem.	If pinned connection, check condition.	Replace pin and/or oversize
Keyway	Run a key in groove without toppling, excessive clearance, no side burrs, and no out-of-straightness on the keyway.	Replace stem and keys
Thrust bearing area	Check surface finish for burrs or wear.	Remove a maximum of 0.010 in (0.25 mm) by machining
Stem diameter in sealing area	Clearances and profile in conformance <del>compliance</del> with seal OEM data.	Replace
Plating/coatings	No flaking, scratches, or other damage.	Grind off plating and re-apply, ensuring dimensions within original values.
<b>Wear Surfaces</b>		
General	Surface inspection and checks for disbondment.  Surface inspection and inspect for disbondment of coating, plating, cladding or other surface treatment.	Replace.
<b>Scratches, Scores or Other Damage to Sealing Surfaces of the Ball</b>		
General	Surface visual inspection.	Re-grind ball. Nominal reduction permitted is 0.001 in. per inch (0.001 mm per mm) of ball spherical diameter, with a maximum of 0.040 in. (1 mm). Otherwise weld repair or replace.
Plating damage	Surface visual inspection.	Remove plating <del>by grinding or dipping</del> . Ball no smaller than 0.010 in. (0.25 mm) after grinding. Replace plating.
Trunnion damage	Surface visual inspection.	Weld repair or replace. No under-sizing permitted.
Tungsten carbide coating (TCC)	Surface visual inspection, plus <del>api</del> PT. No indications in sealing area.	Remove <del>coating T/C TCC by grinding or dipping</del> .  Ball dimensions may be reduced by 0.001 in per inch (0.001 mm per mm) of ball spherical diameter with a maximum of 0.04 in (1 mm) Re-coat. No reduction in thickness permitted on parallel type gate valves.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

Hard weld deposit/facing	Surface visual inspection plus PT.	Repair method to be agreed between repairer/remanufacturer and purchaser.
<b>Inserts and Seat Ring</b>		
Soft insert	Surface inspection for impregnation of solids, digs, scuffs.	Skimming of insert and seat ring to maintain original profile. No more than 0.005 in (0.12 mm) shall be removed. Remove no more than 0.005 in shall be removed. Otherwise new seats or, depending on design/material, reinsertion.
Tungsten carbide coating (TCC)	Surface visual inspection, plus PT. No indications in sealing area.	Remove coating T/C TCC by grinding or dipping. Re-establish original geometry.
Hard weld deposit/facing	Surface visual inspection plus PT.	Repair method to be agreed.
General inspection	No splits, stretch, swelling, nipping, nibbling, extrusion, bubbles, discoloration, compression set. (See ISO 3601-3 for guidance on geometry).	Replace.
General inspection.	All studs to be removed from tapped holes and inspected.	Bolts/studs damaged or not able to be removed without damage to be replaced
Straightness.	Any bending determined by either rolling on flat table or with straight edge.	Replace
<b>Bolting</b>		
Thread profile	Check by running nut down full length, plus no burrs, thread pulls or rounding, necking	Replace per Section 8
Under head cracking.	Inspect under head of bolts and cap screws by PT/MT. No indications permitted	Replace per Section 8
Thread tolerance	Per repairer/remanufacturer or purchaser requirements. See 5.2.  ASME B1.1. Class 1A. after being chased out by lathe/machining	Replace per Section 8
Marking	Check bolts have for manufacturers mark and/or material grade stamped on ends and/or head. e.g. ASTM A962	If no marking, replace bolts. See A.5.7
Grade/markings	Per repairer/remanufacturer or purchaser requirements.  Check for 12.9 or higher strength	Replace if necessary. Shall not be reused.

Head.	Any damage to the external hex, 12-point head or internal hex which could compromise the safe and reliable application of load	Replace <b>per Section 8</b>
<b>Drains and Plugs</b>		
Drain cocks/ threaded plugs	Removed and checked for functionality, sealing, damage, threads with go/no gauges.	Replace.
Sealant injection ports/fittings	Removed and checked for functionality, sealing, damage, threads with go/no gauges. In addition, pressure tested to the hydrotest pressure of the valve body prior to re-assembly.	Replace.
<b>FOOTNOTE</b> Table A.4 may be used as a template for completing the activities in A.5.		

#### **~~A.5.2 Bodies, Bonnets, End Connectors, End pieces, Tailpieces and Covers~~**

Body, bonnet, end connectors, end pieces, tailpieces, and covers shall be visually inspected.

NOTE NDE may be employed to investigate the extent of visual defects.

Defects such as cracks, wear, cuts, scoring or excessive metal loss shall be brought to the attention of the owner for disposition instructions.

All tapped holes shall be visually inspected for missing or incomplete threads, defective thread profile, torn or ruptured surfaces and cracks. Defects shall be removed/repared.

End connector dimensions shall conform to the applicable specification per design requirements of Section 5. Face-to-face and end-to-end dimensions shall conform to Section 5 or to dimensions specified by the owner.

Stem seal preparations or stuffing boxes shall be examined for the proper condition and finish consistent with the seal design. Surface corrosion shall be removed by polishing, machining, or other suitable means. Dimensions and finishes of the **repairer/remanufacturer** **repaired/remanufactured** surface shall be inspected and documented.

#### **~~A.5.3 Stems~~**

Stem sealing surfaces shall be smooth and free of defects that can affect the ability to seal or functionality of the part. The parts shall be free of burrs or other mechanical damage that can affect the strength, function, or fitness of the part for its intended use. The dimension of the sealing area shall be inspected and documented.

Stems with threads shall be inspected for missing or incomplete threads, defective thread profile, torn or ruptured surfaces and cracks.

NOTE The surface texture of threaded parts may be evaluated without magnification.

Rising stems shall be inspected for straightness, finish, and cylindricity.

Stem heads or other connectors shall engage properly with the mating component.

#### **~~A.5.4 Pressure Controlling Parts (Gate, Ball, Plug, Disc, Seats, Clappers, etc.)~~**

Pressure-controlling parts shall be visually inspected for corrosion, wear, pitting, erosive wear, or other defects.

#### **~~A.5.5 Bearings~~**

Bearings shall be free of damage, excessive corrosion, or wear. Coatings or liners shall not be torn, damaged or excessively worn. Operation shall be smooth. If these requirements cannot be satisfied, then bearings shall be replaced.

#### **~~A.5.6 Stem Nut (Gate and Rising Stem Ball Valves)~~**

Visually inspect stem nut and stem housing for corrosion, galling or wear on the bearing surfaces. Internal and external threads shall be visually inspected for condition and proper engagement with the external stem threads.

#### **~~A.5.7 Body-to-Bonnet/Closure/End piece/Tailpiece End Connector/Cover Bolting~~**

Unless specified otherwise by the owner, all pressure-boundary bolting shall be replaced. Replacement bolting shall as a minimum minimally conform to API-20E BSL1 Section 8.

#### **~~A.5.8 Other Components~~**

Other components shall be visually inspected and items which need to be replaced or remanufactured shall be processed in accordance with the repairer/remanufacturer procedures.

### **A.6 Repair/Remanufacture/Replacement of Valve Parts**

#### **~~A.6.1 Control of Manufacturing Operations~~**

Repair and remanufacture operations shall be performed in accordance with documented procedures.

#### **A.6.2 Replacement Parts and Material**

##### **A.6.2.1 Source Material**

Materials used for replacement parts shall conform to Section 6.

The source of replacement parts shall be either OEM replacement parts or non-OEM and/or reverse engineered parts which meet the requirements of A.6.2.2.

##### **A.6.2.2 Non-OEM Component Materials Replacement Parts**

For non-OEM/reverse engineered non-OEM components, and/or reversed engineered parts shall meet the requirements of Table A.5.

The material shall be identified, and critical dimensions verified to be the same as the original component.

#### **~~A.6.3 Welding~~**

Welding, including repair welding procedures and welder/welding operators' qualifications shall conform to 7.4.

Procedures for non-pressure-containing or non-load bearing welds shall be qualified per the repairer/remanufacturer's requirements.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

When post weld heat treatment is required, it shall conform to Section 7.

**Table A.5—Requirements for Replacement Parts of Non-OEM/Reverse Engineered Parts**

Replacement	Minimum Design	Material Requirements	Inspection and Test
<b>Body, End Connectors</b>			
No	N/A	N/A	N/A
<b>Top Plate, Bonnet</b>			
Yes <sup>a,b</sup>	Pressure and load calculations as required.	Full traceability and part of data package. PMI for all materials except carbon and low alloy steel.	DPI or MPI, PT or MT of machined surfaces. Installed and operational as part of the body hydrotest.
<b>Stem</b>			
Yes <sup>a,b</sup>	Full stress analysis for the maximum actuator/gearbox torque or force.	Full traceability and part of data package. PMI for all materials except carbon and low alloy steel.	DPI or MPI, PT or MT of machined surfaces. Installed and operational as part of the body hydrotest.
<b>Seat Inserts in Original Seat Rings</b>			
Yes <sup>a,c</sup>	Evidence that the repair company has knowledge, equipment, and experience to re-insert seat seals.	Material certificates and/or Certificates of Conformance (C of C) for insert materials.	<p>Part of seat test.</p> <p><del>Valve shall be subjected to break out test, to demonstrate stability of the seat ring.</del></p> <p>Valve shall be stroked under full differential pressure, to demonstrate the stability of the seat ring and insert.</p> <p>The valve shall then be seat tested again to demonstrate sealing capability.</p>
<b>New Metallic Seat Rings with New Inserts</b>			
Yes <sup>a,c</sup>	Same as for seat inserts in original seat rings, and demonstration that seat ring is manufactured from material with equivalent performance to the original. In additions demonstration that surface finish, squeeze, fill and extrusion gap requirements of seal manufacturer met.	Material certificates and/or Certificates of Conformance (C of C) for insert materials.	<p>Part of seat test.</p> <p><del>Valve shall be subjected to break out test, to demonstrate stability of the seat ring.</del></p> <p>Valve shall be stroked under full differential pressure, to demonstrate the stability of the seat ring and insert.</p> <p>The valve shall then be seat tested again to demonstrate sealing capability.</p> <p>In addition, and where relevant, ensure cavity relief functions adequately.</p>
<b>Bearings</b>			

Replacement	Minimum Design	Material Requirements	Inspection and Test
Yes <sup>a</sup>	Calculations to demonstrate the Pressure, velocity and pressure x velocity criteria are not exceeded for the bearing.	Calculations included and Certificates of Conformance (C of C) for bearings. PMI of backing material if in special alloys or specifically requested.	Function test at break-out and/or at pressure.  Function test at full differential pressure shall be performed a minimum of three times to demonstrate the performance of the bearings. The valve torque or input force shall be measured and shall not increase by more than 10%  The valve input torque or thrust shall not exceed the values listed in 5.4.2.1  NOTE May be the same test for seat insert performance.
<b>Valve Closure Member (i.e., Ball, Gate, Plug as Appropriate)</b>			
Yes <sup>a,b</sup>	Demonstration that the obturator closure member design is equivalent to the OEM.	Material certificates. Traceability.	Valve seat and performance test.
<b>Springs (Inside the Valve)</b>			
Yes <sup>a</sup>	Demonstration the stiffness and free length are within 10% of the OEM values.	Material certificates or Certificates of Conformance. NACE MR0175 / ISO 15156 compliance if required.	Valve performance testing.
<b>Elastomers</b>			
Yes <sup>a,c</sup>	Calculations for squeeze, fill and extrusion.	Certificates of Conformance.	Valve performance testing.
<b>Polymeric Seals and Lip Seals</b>			
Yes <sup>a,c</sup>	None.	Certificates of Conformance.	Surface finish checks of housings.
<b>Pressure-Boundary Bolts (Like-for-like Replacement)</b>			
Yes	None.	Material certification.	Valve pressure test.
<b>Pressure-Boundary Bolts, Change of Material</b>			
Yes <sup>a</sup>	Pressure containment calculations to verify design adequacy.	Material certification.	Valve test pressure.
<b>Ancillary Fittings including Injectors</b>			
Yes	None.	Material certification including pressure test.	Pressure test.
FOOTNOTES <sup>a</sup> When agreed <sup>b</sup> Alternative materials to original manufacture may be used. <sup>c</sup> Any change to original material shall be by agreement and shall take consideration of fire-test status.			

#### **A.6.4 Nondestructive Examination (NDE)**

Where applicable, NDE shall be performed and evaluated by ASNT SNT-TC-1A or ISO 9712 Level II qualified technicians. Procedures for the NDE evaluation method/acceptance shall conform to Annex I, where applicable.

#### **A.6.5 Valve End Connector Modifications**

RF flange valves may be converted to RTJ or RTJ flanges may be converted to RF when requested by the purchaser-owner and shall be limited by the requirements of Section 5.2.

Conversion from weld-end to flanged-end or flanged-end to weld-end shall be done by agreement with the purchaser.

NOTE Modifications are typically accomplished by weld deposits and subsequent machining.

## A.7 Reassembly

Reassembly of remanufacturer/repairer repaired/remanufactured valves shall conform to 9.6.

When specified by the owner, no lubricant shall be used on valves during assembly. If minimal lubricant is required, the remanufacturer/repairer repairer/remanufacturer shall supply details to the owner for evaluation.

Repainting or recoating shall conform to the manufacturer's repairer/remanufacturer written procedures, unless otherwise agreed.

## A.8 Final Acceptance—Pressure Testing

Repaired/remanufactured valves shall be pressure tested in accordance with the requirements of Section 10.

## A.9 Equipment Marking

Repaired/remanufactured valves shall have a new nameplate in accordance with the requirements of 12.3.

NOTE As noted in A.4.1.2, original nameplate remains.

Information on the nameplate shall conform to Table A.6.

**Table A.6 —Nameplate Marking Requirements**

Marking	Format
Remanufacturer or Repairer name	ABC Valve Repair Company
6DRM or 6DR	6DRM (for remanufacturer) or 6DR (for repairer)
Unique identifier number	R/RM-XXXXXXXXXXXXXX-XX
Date of Remanufacture/ Repair	DOMRM/R MM-YY or DOMM/R MM-YYYY
Pressure class	150/300/400/600/900/1500/2500
Face-to-face/end-to-end dimensions	26.00 in. (660 mm)
Trim identification: material grade symbols indicating metallic materials for: - stem - sealing faces - closure members - non-metallic seal materials	17-4 316SS LF2 FKM
Nominal valve size a) full-opening valves: nominal valve size b) reduced-opening valves:	8 NPS (200DN) 8X6 NPS (200X150 DN) or 8R (186)

If an end connector is modified from RTJ to RF (see A.6.5) the R-number R-value, when visible, shall be removed from the valve body and the end connector.

If an end connector is modified from RF to RTJ (see A.6.5) the R-number shall be marked on the end connector.

In addition to the nameplate, the unique identifier number shall be marked on the body.

## A.10 Preparation for Shipment and Short-term Storage

Repaired/remanufactured valves shall be prepared for shipment and short-term storage shall conform to the requirements of Section 13.

## A.11 Documentation

In addition to, the requirements of Section 14, the following shall be retained for remanufactured/repaired valves:

When applicable, the documentation related to the repair or remanufacture listed below shall be maintained by the repairer/remanufacturer for a minimum of 10 years following the date of manufacture:

- design documentation;
- weld procedure specification (WPS)
- weld procedure qualification record (PQR)
- NDE records [for radiographic testing (RT), minimum NDE records are reader sheets and technique sheet] or surface NDE (MT or PT) or Ultrasonic testing] when performed per Annex I
- Visual inspection records of castings (see 9.4.1)
- chloride content in the hydrostatic test water (see 10.1.2)
- As received-inspection results, see Table A.1
- Applicable photographic evidence, see Table A.2
- Applicable nameplates/tags (or a photograph or scan of the tag) from the previous repairer/remanufacturer that have been removed (see A.4.1.2)
- New Unique identifier number, see A.4.1.2
  - 1) material test report for body, bonnet/cover, stem and end connector and additional related requirements of Annex I, when applicable
  - 2) pressure test results (including hydrostatic and or gas) and additional related requirements of Annex I when applicable.
  - 3) for sour service valves, certificate of conformance to NACE MR0175/ ISO 15156

NOTE Purchaser or regulatory requirements can specify additional records or a longer record retention period.

The documentation shall be provided by the manufacturer in legible, retrievable, and reproducible form and free of damage.

Documentation shall include the reason of repair/re-manufacturing, types of repairs performed, and parts replaced (if applicable).



## **Annex B**

(informative)

### **Examples of Valve Configurations**

This annex shows examples of possible configurations for gate, plug, ball, check, and axial valves with flanged and welding ends for illustration purposes only. Other configurations not shown in this annex of the same type of valve may apply.

**Figure B.1**—Axial Valve

**Figure B.2**—Ball Valve (Floating)

**Figure B.3**—Ball Valve (Side-entry Trunnion Mounted)

**Figure B.4**—Ball Valve (Top-entry Trunnion Mounted)

**Figure B.5**—Ball Valve (Welded-body Trunnion Mounted)

**Figure B.6**—Check Valve (Axial Flow)

**Figure B.7**—Check Valve (Full-opening Swing)

**Figure B.8**—Check Valve (Long Pattern, Single-plate Wafer-type)

**Figure B.9**—Check Valve (Long Pattern, Typical Dual-plate Wafer-type)

**Figure B.10**—Check Valve (Piston)

**Figure B.11**—Check Valve (Reduced-opening Swing)

**Figure B.12**—Check Valve, Short Pattern (Single-plate Wafer-type)

**Figure B.13**—Gate Valve (Expanding-gate/Rising-stem)

**Figure B.14**—Gate Valve (Slab-gate/Through-conduit Rising-stem)

**Figure B.15**—Plug Valve

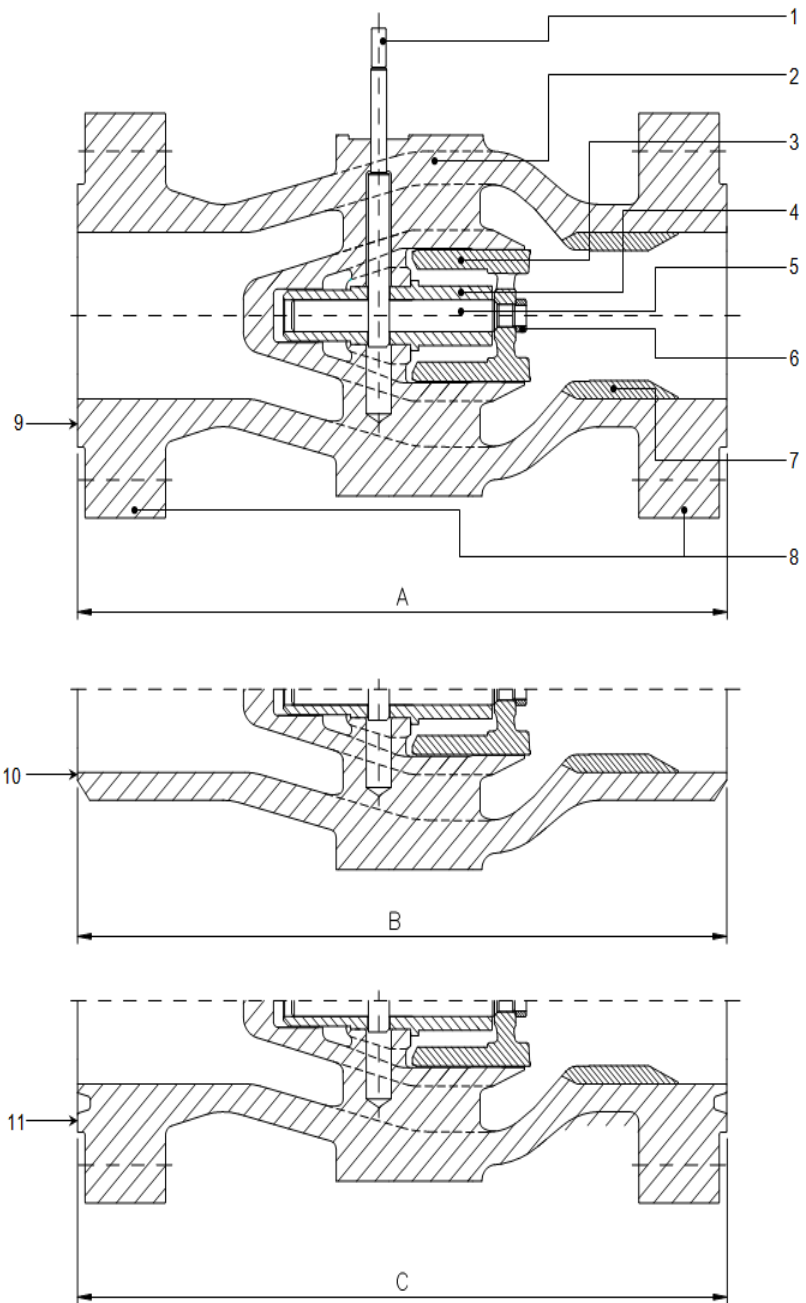
**Figure B.16** Rising Stem Ball Valve

## Key

- 1 stem
- 2 body
- 3 piston
- 4 piston rod guide
- 5 piston rod
- 6 piston nut
- 7 seat ring
- 8 end connector
- 9 raised face
- 10 welding end
- 11 ring joint groove

- A raised-face face-to-face dimension
- B welding-end end-to-end dimension
- C ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C for dimensions A, B, and C.



**B.1—Axial Valve**

## Key

- 1 stem
- 2 stem seal
- 3 end connector
- 4 seat ring
- 5 ball
- 6 body bolting
- 7 body
- 8 raised face
- 9 welding end
- 10 ring joint groove

- A raised-face face-to-face dimension
- B welding-end end-to-end dimension
- C ring joint end-to-end dimension

See Applicable Table in Annex C for dimensions A, B, and C.

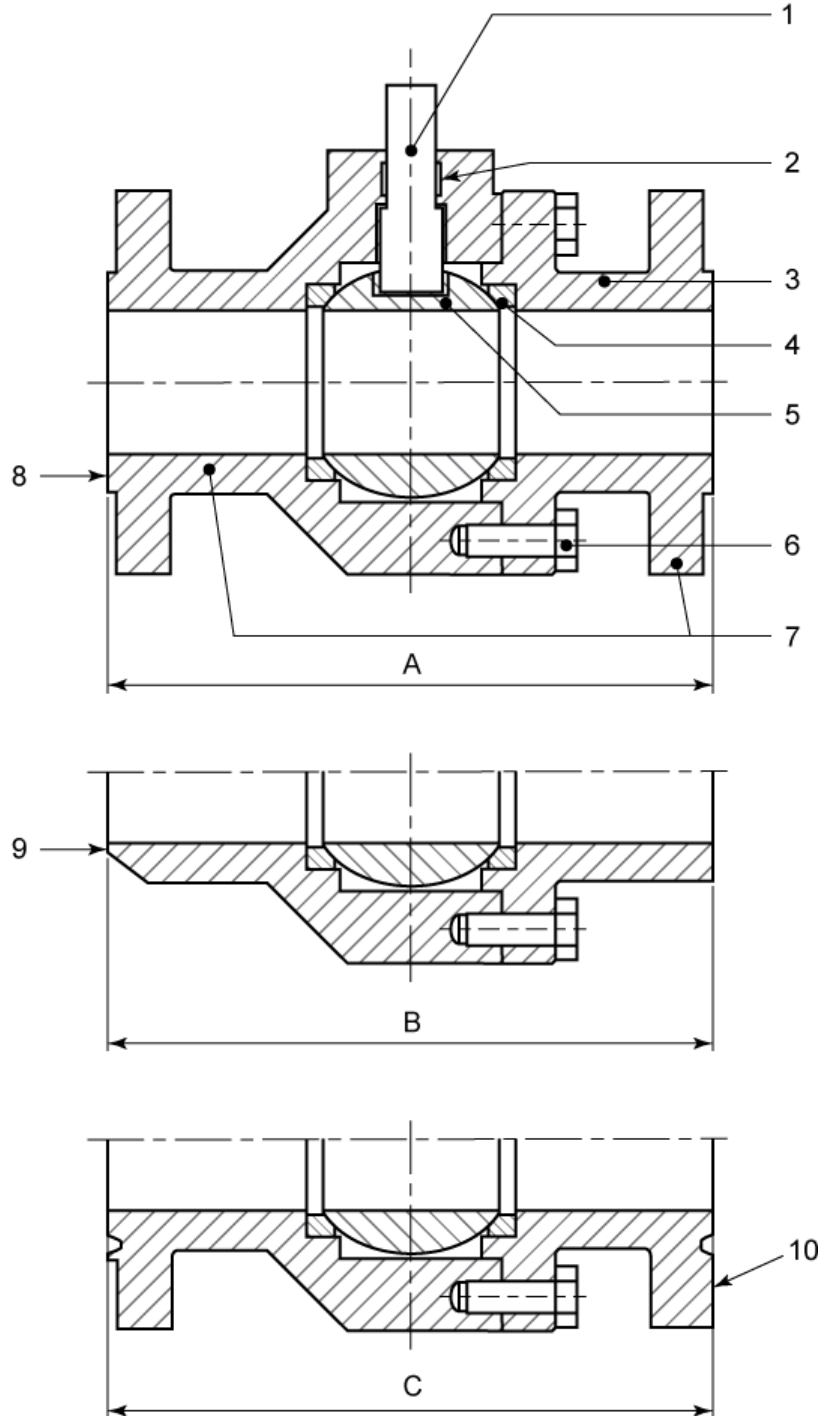


Figure B.2—Ball Valve (Floating)

## Key

- 1 stem
- 2 body cover
- 3 stem seal
- 4 body
- 5 seat ring
- 6 ball
- 7 body bolting
- 8 end connector
- 9 raised face
- 10 welding end
- 11 ring joint groove
- 12
- A raised-face face-to-face dimension
- B welding-end end-to-end dimension
- C ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C for dimensions A, B, and C.

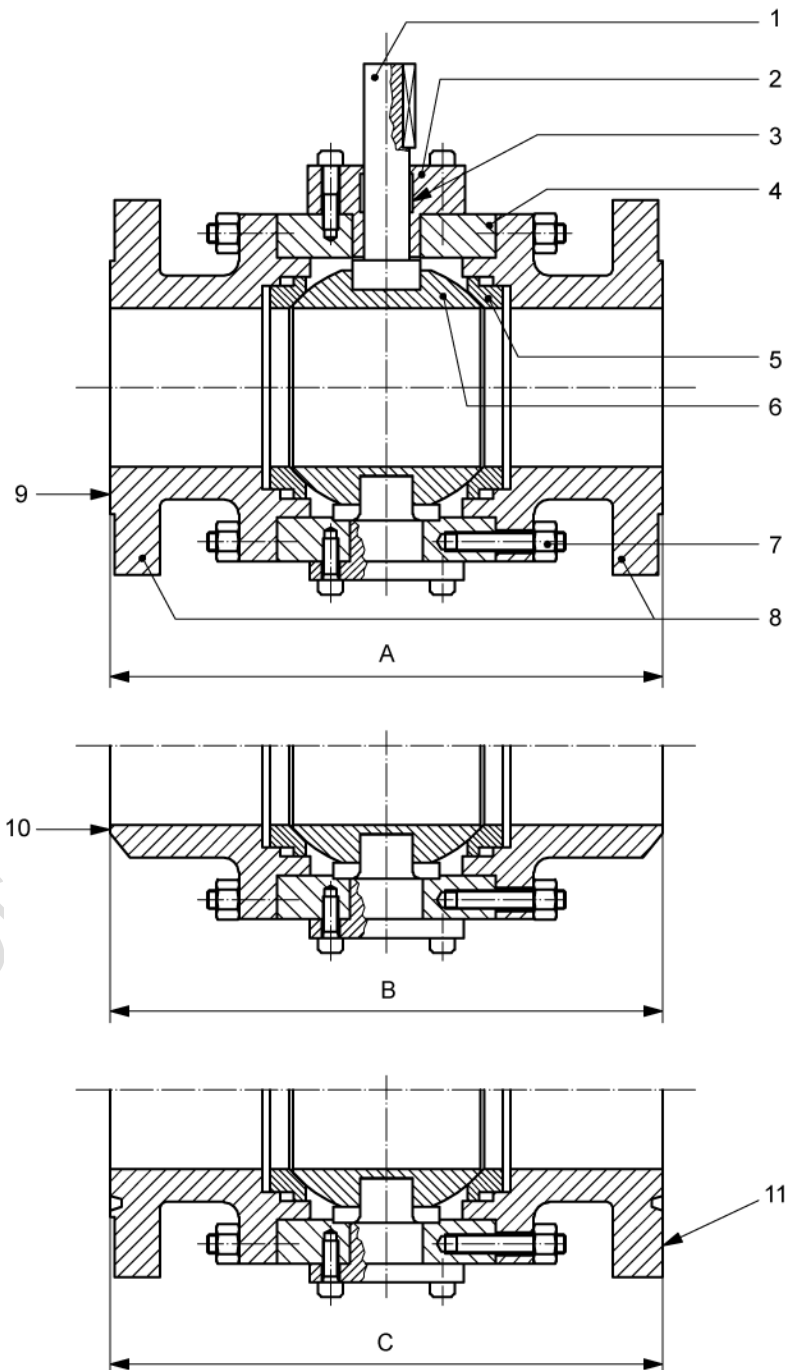


Figure B.3—Ball Valve (Side-entry Trunnion Mounted)

## Key

- 1 stem seal
- 2 bonnet cover
- 3 bonnet
- 4 body bolting
- 5 body
- 6 seat ring
- 7 stem
- 8 ball
- 9 raised face
- 10 welding end
- 11 ring joint groove

- A raised-face face-to-face dimension
- B welding-end end-to-end dimension
- C ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C for dimensions A, B, and C.

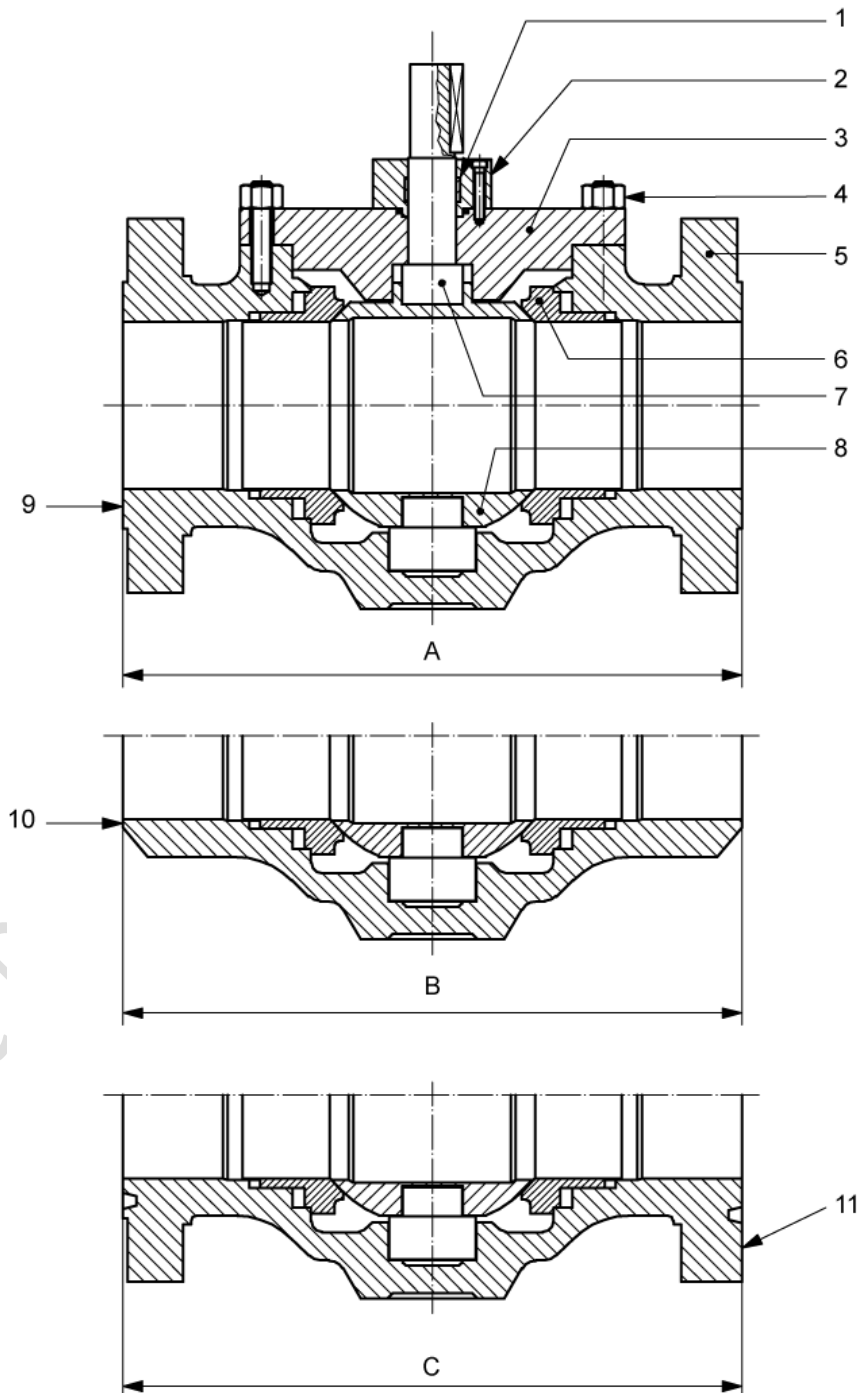


Figure B.4—Ball Valve (Top-entry Trunnion Mounted)

# Key

- 1 stem
- 2 body cover
- 3 stem seal
- 4 body
- 5 seat ring
- 6 ball
- 7 end connector
- 8 raised face
- 9 welding end
- 10 ring joint groove

A raised-face face-to-face dimension

B welding-end end-to-end dimension

C ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C for dimensions A, B, and C.

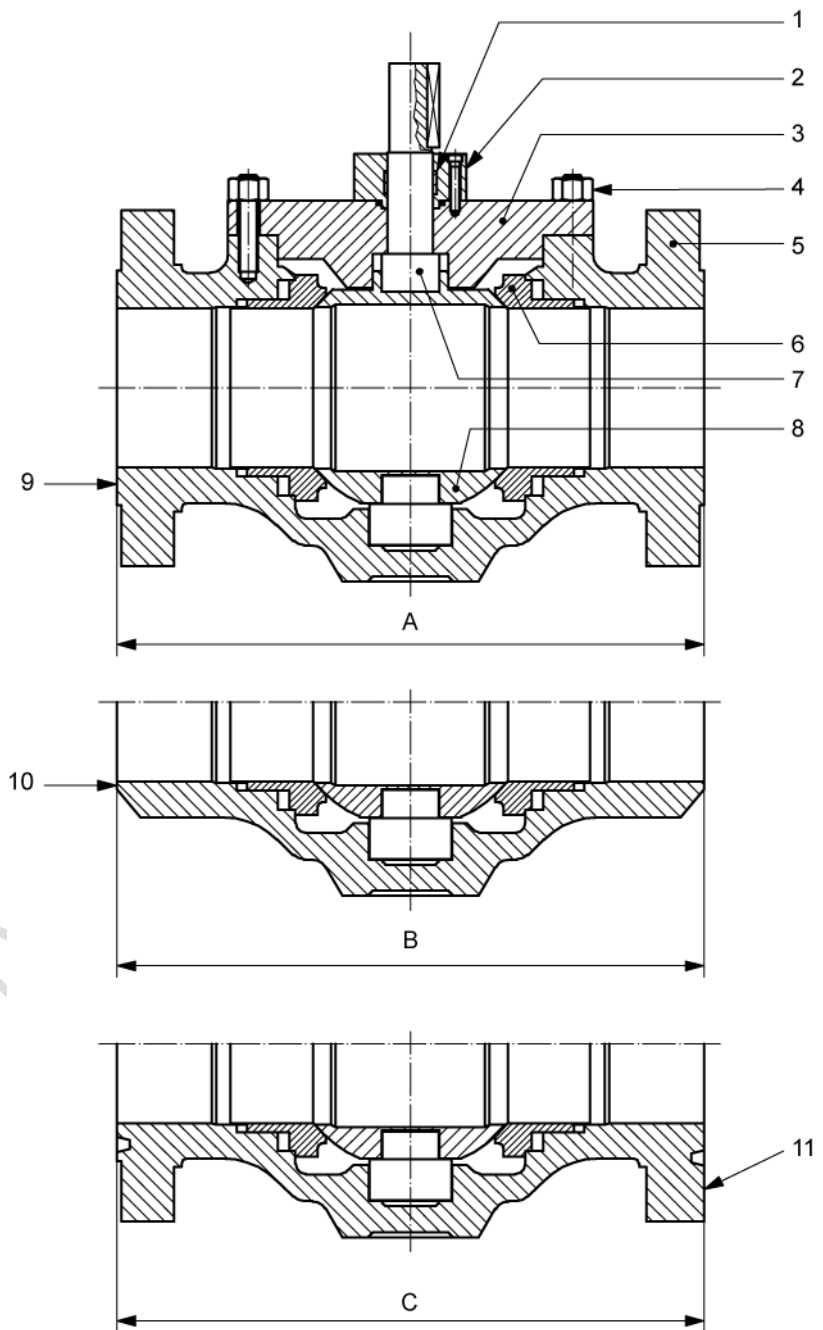


Figure B.5—Ball Valve (Welded-body Trunnion Mounted)

# Key

- 1 body
- 2 rod guidance
- 3 disc
- 4 bearing
- 5 spring
- 6 flow direction

- A* raised-face face-to-face dimension
- B* welding-end end-to-end dimension
- C* ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C for dimensions *A*, *B*, and *C*.

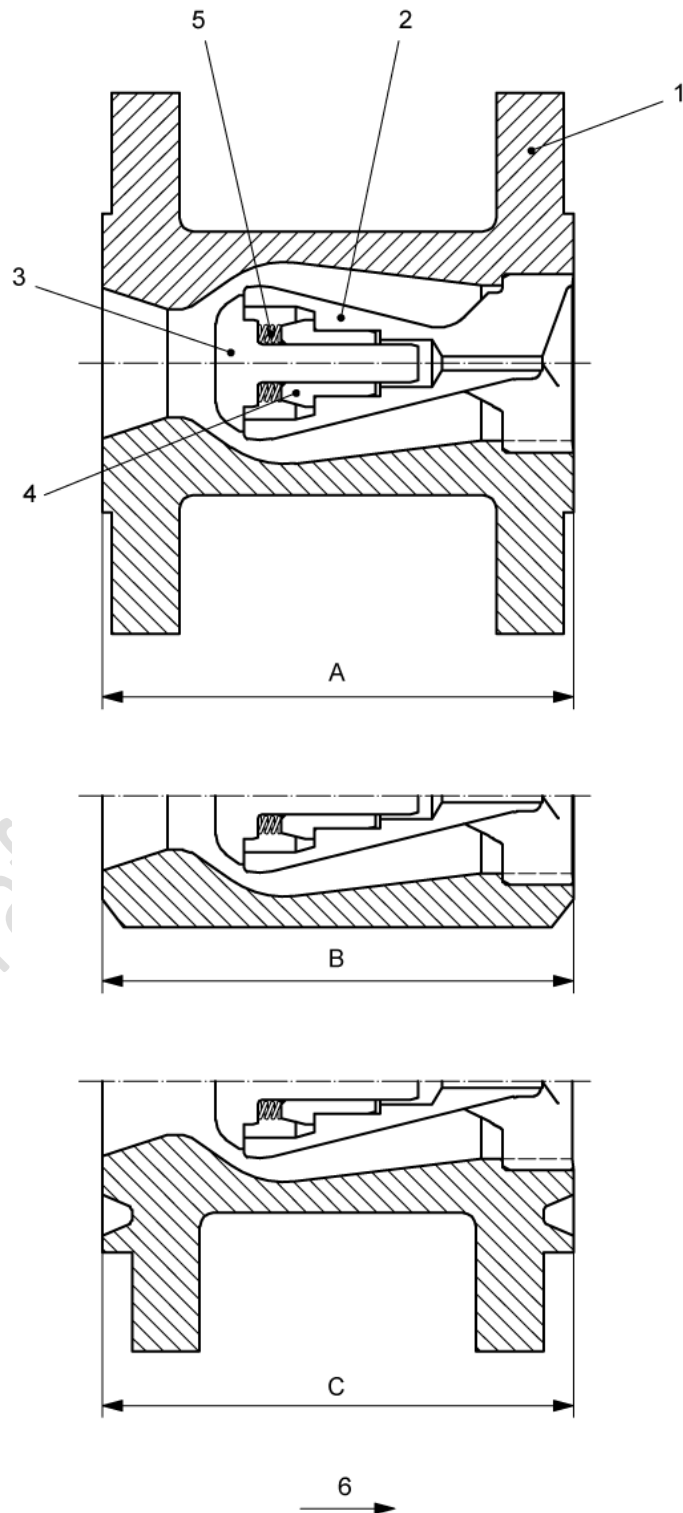


Figure B.6—Check Valve (Axial Flow)

# Key

- 1 cover bolting
- 2 cover
- 3 body
- 4 clapper disc arm
- 5 shaft
- 6 seat ring
- 7 clapper disc
- 8 support legs
- 9 raised face
- 10 welding end
- 11 ring joint
- 12 direction of flow

- A* raised-face face-to-face dimension  
*B* welding-end end-to-end dimension  
*C* ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Table C.1 to Table C.5 for dimensions *A*, *B*, and *C*.

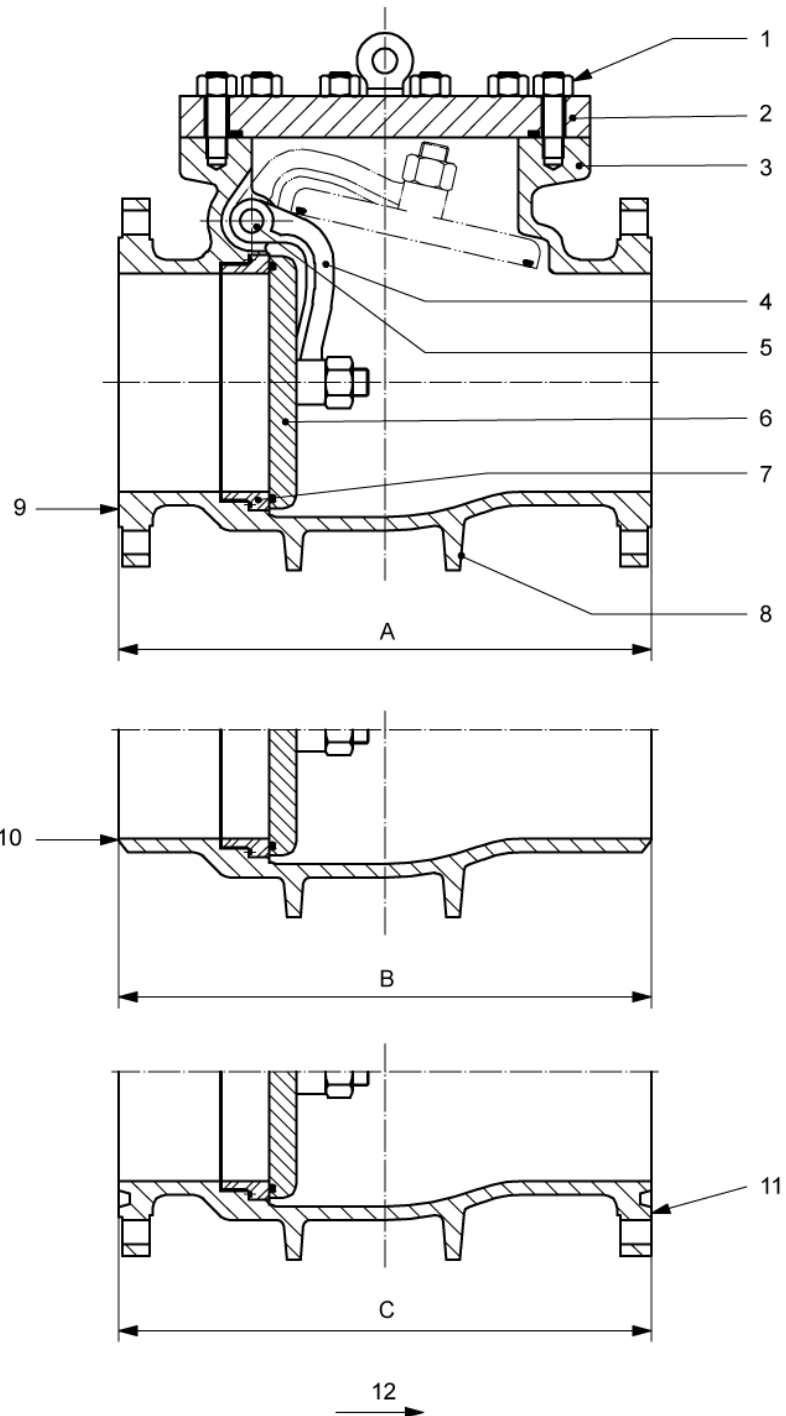
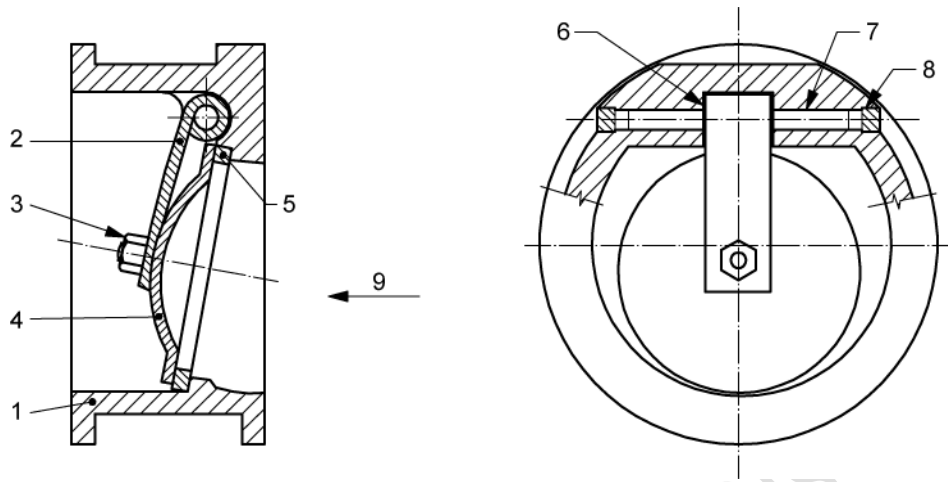


Figure B.7—Check Valve (Full-opening Swing)





#### Key

- 1 body
- 2 hinge
- 3 nut
- 4 closure plate/stud assembly
- 5 seat ring
- 6 bearing spacers
- 7 shaft hinge pin
- 8 shaft hinge pin retainers
- 9 direction of flow

Figure B.8—Check Valve (Long Pattern, Single-plate Wafer-type)

# Key

- 1 body
- 2 closure plate
- 3 stop pin
- 4 spring
- 5 shaft hinge pin
- 6 plate lug bearings
- 7 body lug bearings
- 8 stop pin retainers
- 9 shaft hinge pin retainers
- 10 spring bearings
- 11 direction of flow

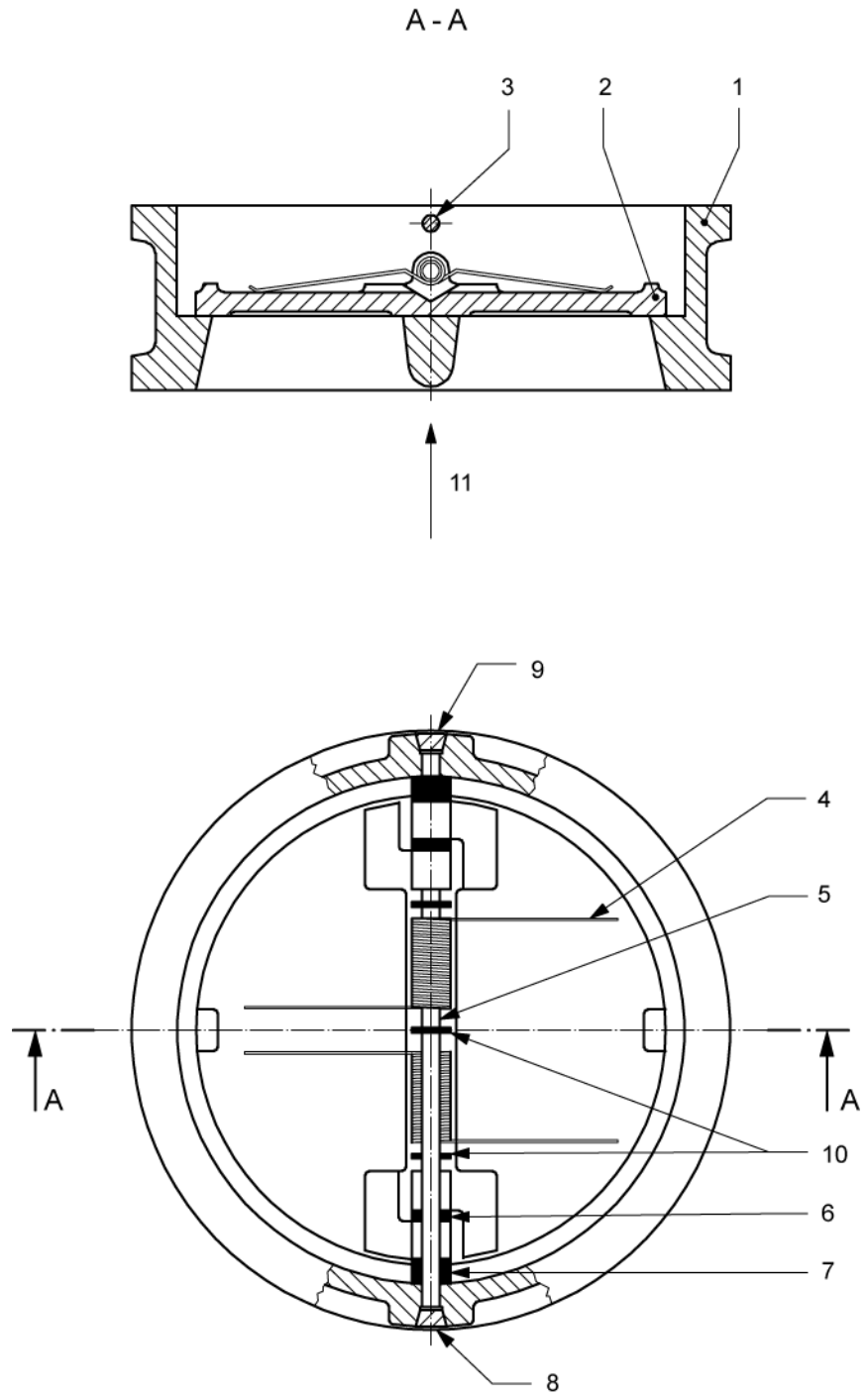


Figure B.9—Check Valve (Long Pattern, Typical Dual-plate Wafer-type)

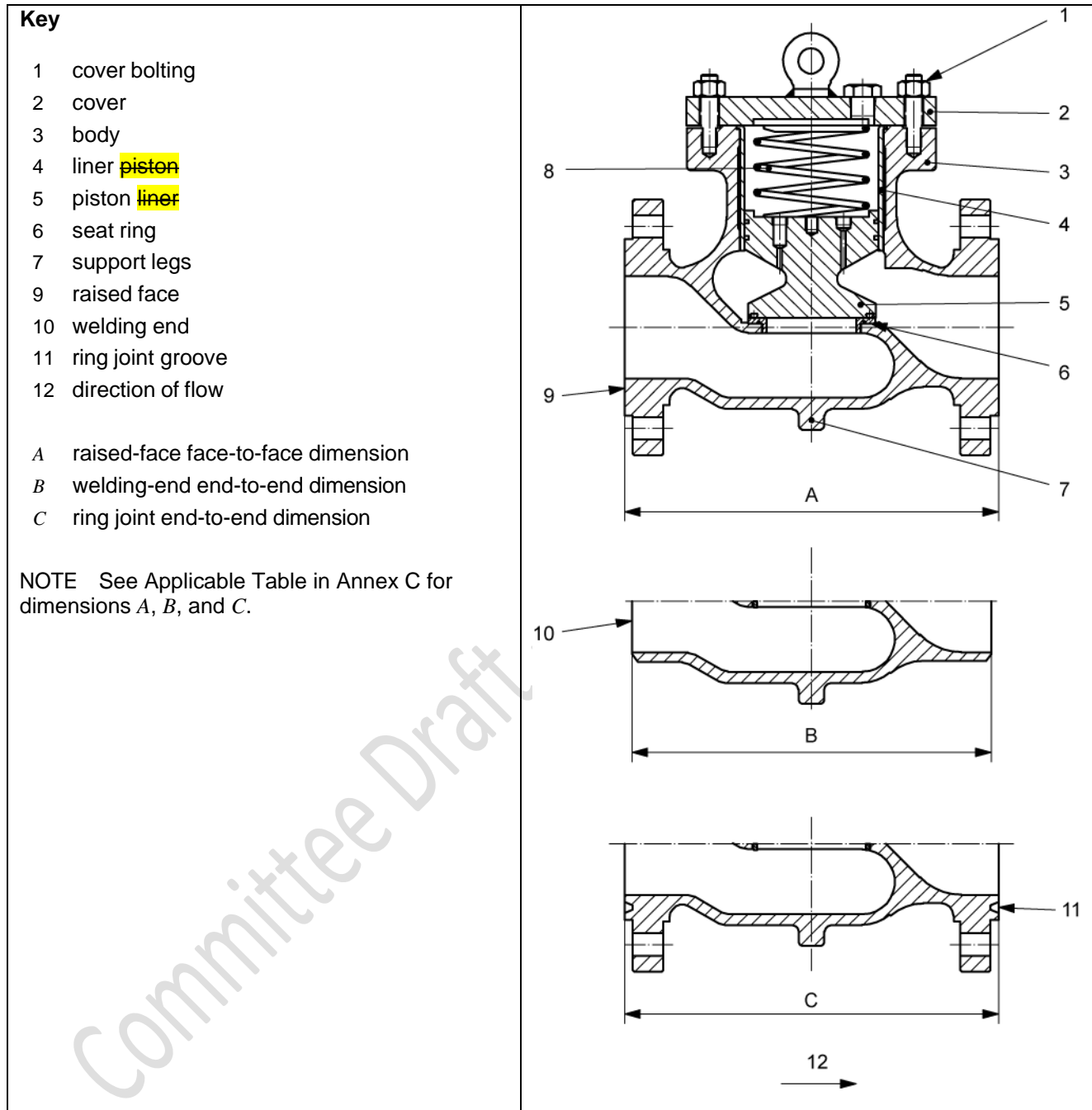


Figure B.10—Check Valve (Piston)

## Key

- 1 cover bolting
- 2 cover
- 3 body
- 4 clapper disc arm
- 5 shaft
- 6 clapper disc
- 7 seat ring
- 8 support legs
- 9 raised face
- 10 welding end
- 11 ring joint groove
- 12 direction of flow

*A* raised-face face-to-face dimension

*B* welding-end end-to-end dimension

*C* ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C for dimensions *A*, *B*, and *C*.

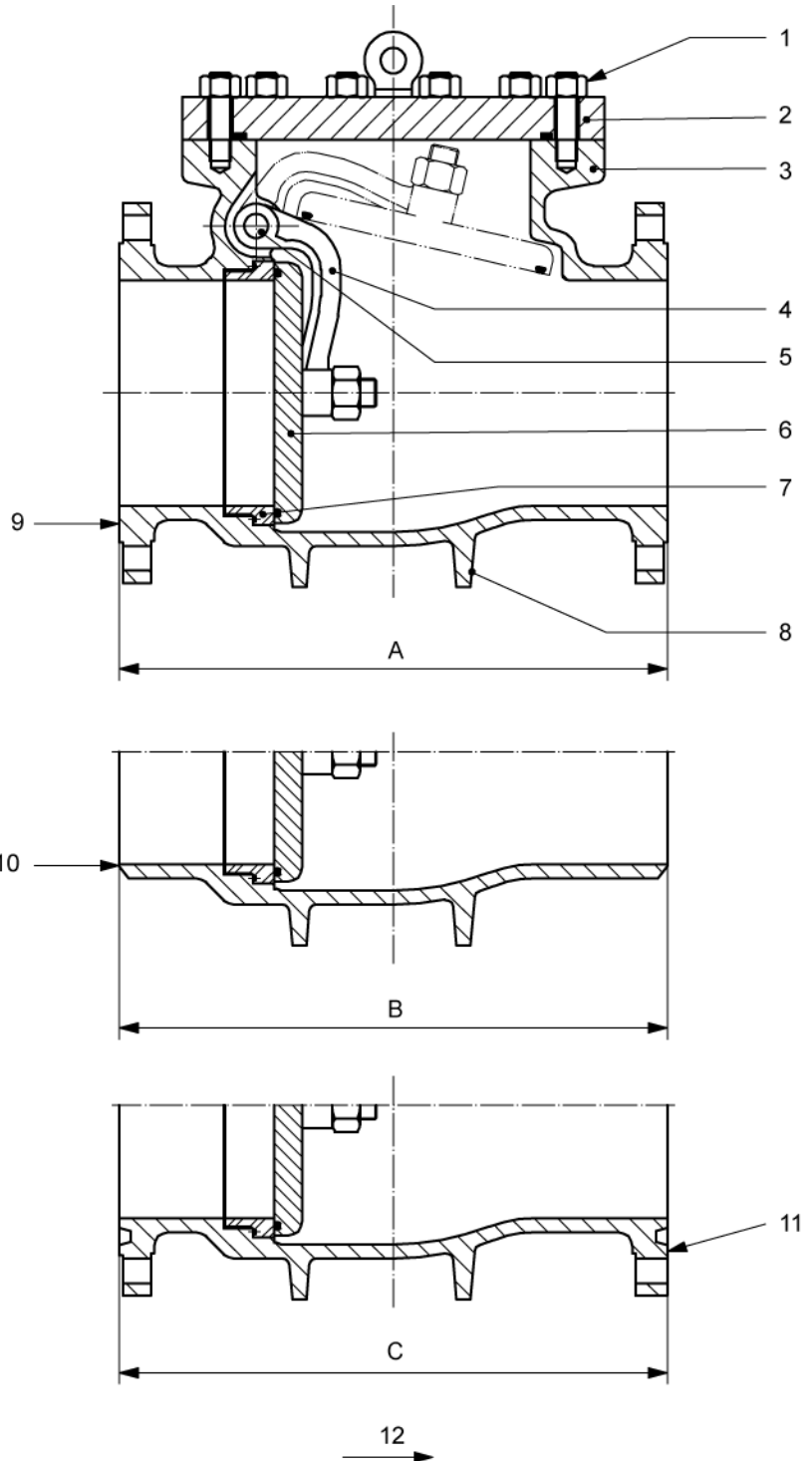
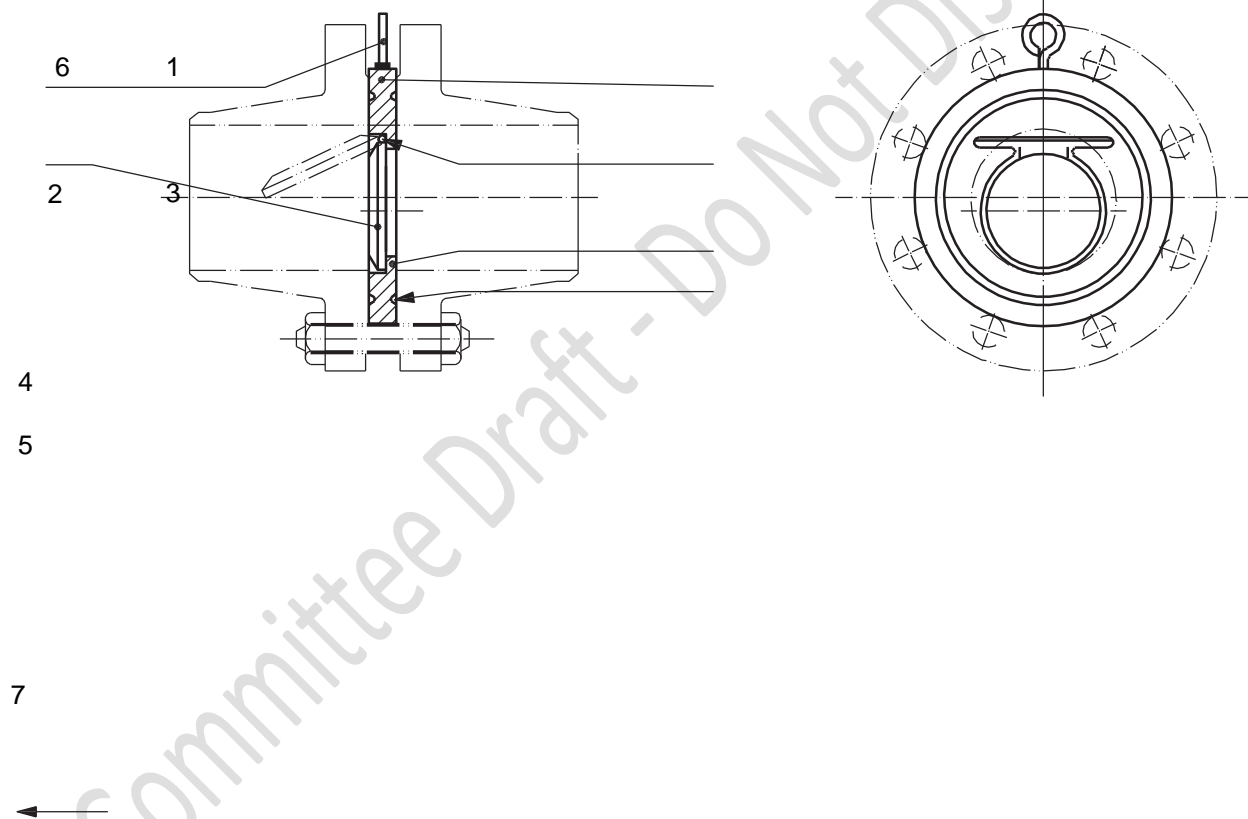


Figure B.11—Swing Check Valve (Reduced-opening)

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---



Key

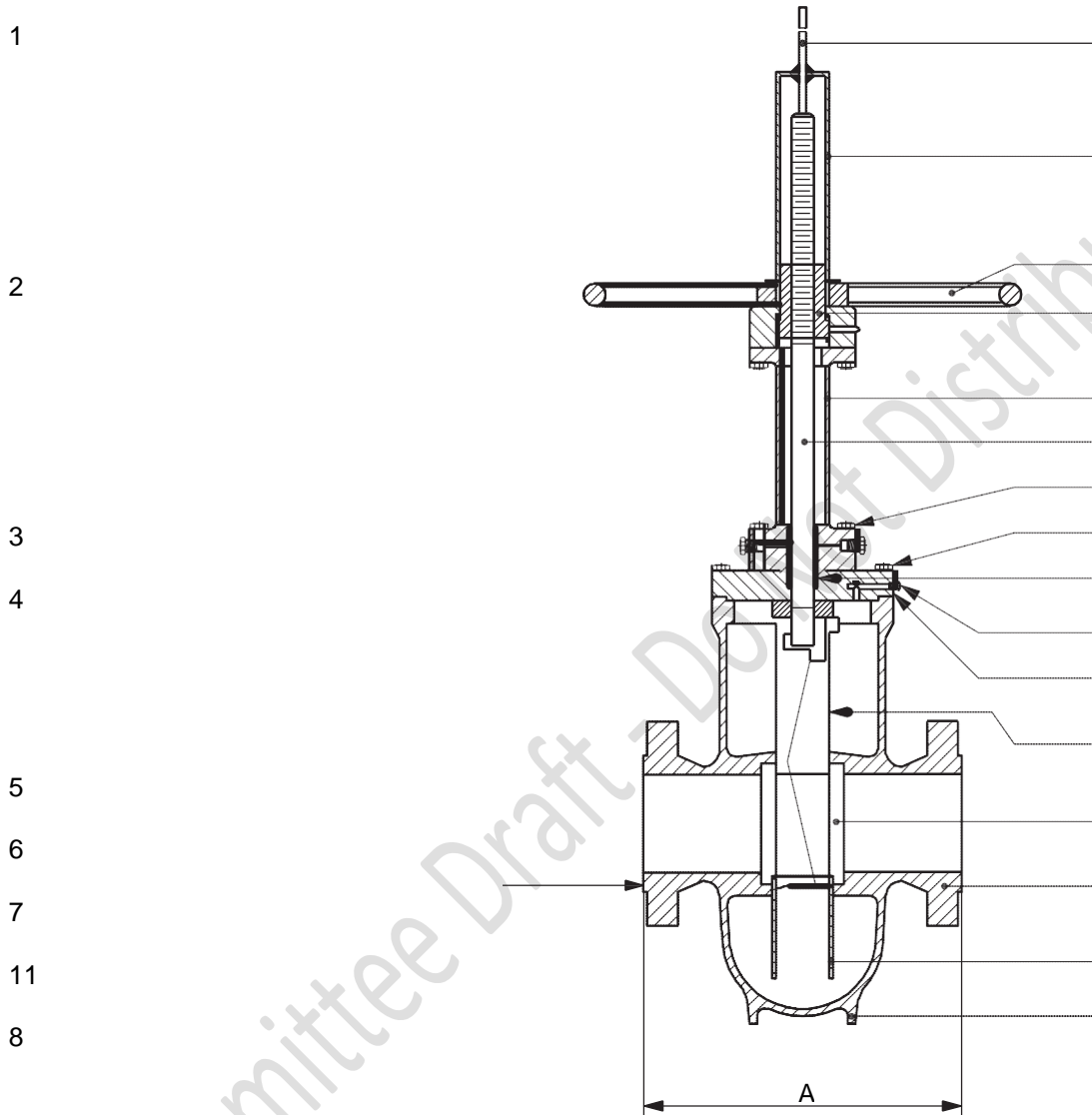
- 1 body
- 2 clapper
- 3 pin

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

- 4 clapper seal
- 5 body seal
- 6 lifting eye
- 7 direction of flow

**Figure B.12—Check Valve (Short Pattern, Single-plate Wafer-type)**



9

Key

- |   |                |    |
|---|----------------|----|
| 1 | stem indicator | 10 |
| 2 | stem enclosure |    |
| 3 | hand-wheel     | 13 |
| 4 | yoke nut       |    |

5 yoke 14

6 stem

7 yoke bolting

17

15

8 stem packing

9 relief valve 12

10 bonnet

11 bonnet bolting 16

12 gate guide

13 gate assembly

14 seat ring

15 body

16 support ribs or legs

17 raised face

18 welding end

19 ring joint groove

A raised-face face-to-face dimension

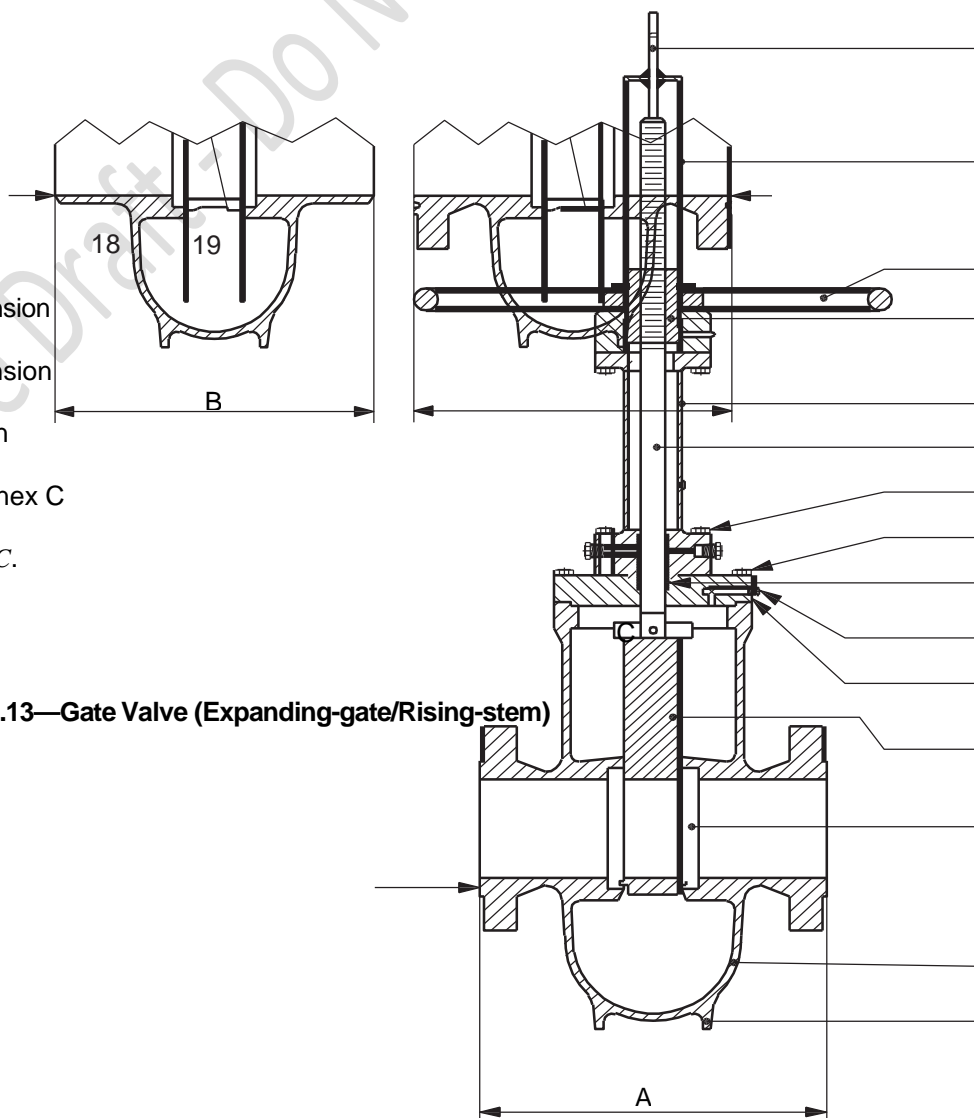
B welding-end end-to-end dimension

C ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C

for dimensions A, B, and C.

Figure B.13—Gate Valve (Expanding-gate/Rising-stem)





1

2

3

4

5

6

7

11

**Key**

8

- |   |                |    |
|---|----------------|----|
| 1 | stem indicator | 9  |
| 2 | stem enclosure | 10 |
| 3 | hand-wheel     |    |
| 4 | yoke nut       | 12 |
| 5 | yoke           |    |
| 6 | stem           |    |
| 7 | yoke bolting   | 13 |
| 8 | stem packing   | 16 |
- 80

- 9 relief valve
- 10 bonnet
- 14
- 11 bonnet bolting
- 12 gate 15
- 13 seat ring
- 14 body
- 15 support ribs or legs
- 16 raised face
- 17 welding end
- 18 ring joint groove

- A raised-face
- face-to-face dimension
- B welding-end 17
- end-to-end dimension
- C ring joint

end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C

for dimensions A, B, and C.

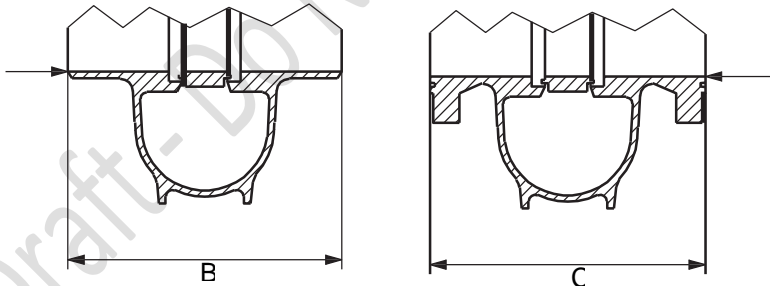
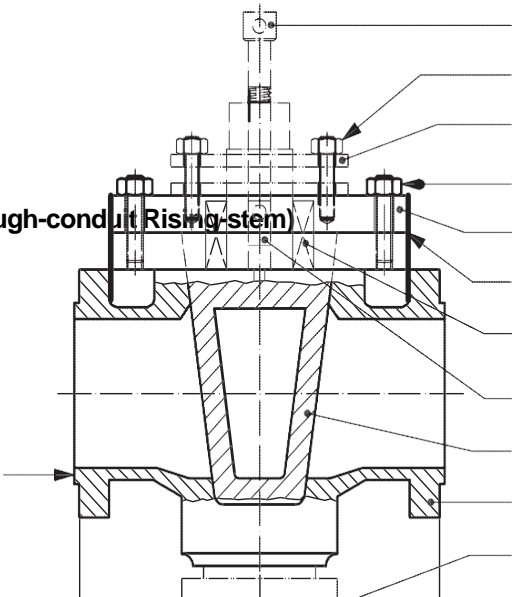


Figure B.14—Gate Valve (Slab-gate/Through-conduit Rising-stem)



2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

12

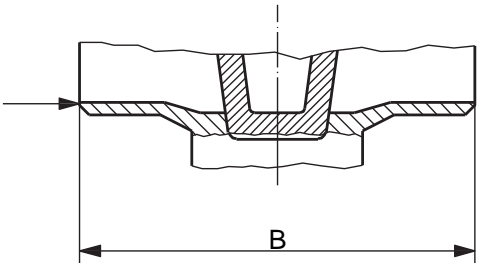
10

11

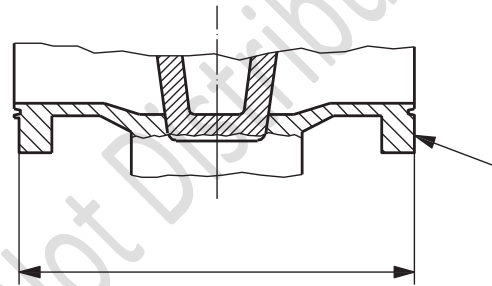
Key

- 1 lubricator screw
- 2 gland studs and nuts
- 3 gland

13



- 4 cover studs and nuts
- 5 cover
- 6 cover gasket
- 7 stem packing
- 8 lubricant check valve
- 9 plug
- 10 body
- 11 stop collar
- 12 raised face
- 13 welding end
- 14 ring joint groove



- A* raised-face face-to-face dimension
- B* welding-end end-to-end dimension
- C* ring joint end-to-end dimension

NOTE See Applicable Table in Annex C for dimensions *A*, *B*, and *C*.

**Figure B.15—Plug Valve**

Add figure

**Figure B.16—Rising Stem Ball Valve**

## **Annex C**

(normative)

### **Valve End-to-end and Face-to-face Dimensions**

This annex shows valve end-to-end and face-to-face dimensions for gate, plug, ball, check and axial valves with raised face, welding end, and ring joint.

**Table C.1**—Axial Valves, Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions

**Table C.2**—Ball Valves-Side-Entry and Top Entry, Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions

**Table C.3**—Check Valves and Axial Check Valves (Full Opening and Reduced Types), Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions

**Table C.4**—Check Valves (Single- and Dual-plate, Long- and Short-pattern, Wafer-type), Face-to-face Dimensions

**Table C.5**—Gate Valves, Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions

**Table C.6**—Plug valves, Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

### C.1—Axial Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>
		Class 150			Class 300		
2	50	11.50 (292)	—	—	11.50 (292)	—	11.63 (295)
2½	65	—	—	—	—	—	—
3	80	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	—	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	14.13 (359)
4	100	17.00 (432)	17.00 (432)	—	17.00 (432)	17.00 (432)	17.13 (435)
6	150	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	—	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	22.13 (562)
8	200	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	—	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	26.13 (664)
10	250	21.00 (533)	22.00 (559)	—	22.38 (568)	22.00 (559)	23.00 (584)
12	300	24.00 (610)	25.00 (635)	—	25.50 (648)	25.00 (635)	26.13 (664)
14	350	27.00 (686)	30.00 (762)	—	30.00 (762)	30.00 (762)	30.63 (778)
16	400	30.00 (762)	33.00 (838)	—	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.63 (854)
18	450	34.00 (864)	36.00 (914)	—	36.00 (914)	36.00 (914)	36.63 (930)
20	500	36.00 (914)	39.00 (991)	—	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.75 (1010)
22	550	—	—	—	—	—	—
24	600	42.00 (1067)	45.00 (1143)	—	45.00 (1143)	45.00 (1143)	45.88 (1165)
26	650	—	—	—	—	—	—
28	700	49.00 (1245)	53.00 (1346)	—	53.00 (1346)	53.00 (1346)	54.00 (1372)
30	750	51.00 (1295)	55.00 (1397)	—	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	56.00 (1422)
32	800	54.00 (1372)	60.00 (1524)	—	60.00 (1524)	60.00 (1524)	61.13 (1553)
34	850	—	—	—	—	—	—
36	900	60.00 (1524)	68.00 (1727)	—	68.00 (1727)	68.00 (1727)	69.13 (1756)
38	950	—	—	—	—	—	—
40	1000	66.00 (1676)	73.60 (1870)	—	73.60 (1870)	73.60 (1870)	—
42	1100	69.00 (1753)	77.00 (1956)	—	77.00 (1956)	77.00 (1956)	—
48	1200	78.00 (1981)	87.25 (2216)	—	87.25 (2216)	87.25 (2216)	—

#### FOOTNOTE

<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.1 for reference to dimension *A*, dimension *B* and dimension *C*

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

### C.1— Axial Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>
		Class 600			Class 900		
2	50	11.50 (292)	—	11.63 (295)	14.50 (368)	—	14.63 (371)
2½	65	—	—	—	—	—	—
3	80	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	14.13 (359)	15.00 (381)	15.00 (381)	15.13 (384)
4	100	17.00 (432)	17.00 (432)	17.13 (435)	18.00 (457)	18.00 (457)	18.13 (460)
6	150	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	22.13 (562)	24.00 (610)	24.00 (610)	24.13 (613)
8	200	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	26.13 (664)	29.00 (737)	29.00 (737)	29.13 (740)
10	250	31.00 (787)	31.00 (787)	31.13 (791)	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)
12	300	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)	38.00 (965)	38.00 (965)	38.13 (968)
14	350	35.00 (889)	35.00 (889)	35.13 (892)	40.50 (1029)	40.50 (1029)	40.88 (1038)
16	400	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.13 (994)	44.50 (1130)	44.50 (1130)	44.88 (1140)
18	450	43.00 (1092)	43.00 (1092)	43.13 (1095)	48.00 (1219)	48.00 (1219)	48.50 (1232)
20	500	47.00 (1194)	47.00 (1194)	47.25 (1200)	52.00 (1321)	52.00 (1321)	52.50 (1334)
22	550	—	—	—	—	—	—
24	600	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	55.38 (1407)	61.00 (1549)	61.00 (1549)	61.75 (1568)
26	650	—	—	—	—	—	—
28	700	61.00 (1549)	61.00 (1549)	61.50 (1562)	69.00 (1753)	69.00 (1753)	69.88 (1775)
30	750	65.00 (1651)	65.00 (1651)	65.50 (1664)	73.00 (1854)	73.00 (1854)	73.88 (1876)
32	800	70.00 (1778)	70.00 (1778)	70.63 (1794)	77.13 (1959)	77.13 (1959)	78.00 (1981)
34	850	—	—	—	—	—	—
36	900	82.00 (2083)	82.00 (2083)	82.63 (2099)	85.25 (2165)	85.25 (2165)	86.38 (2194)
38	950	—	—	—	—	—	—
40	1000	92.00 (2337)	77.00 (1956)	—	93.50 (2375)	93.50 (2375)	—
42	1100	97.25 (2470)	82.30 (2091)	—	97.65 (2480)	97.65 (2480)	—
48	1200	112.85 (2867)	91.60 (2327)	—	109.88 (2791)	109.88 (2791)	—

#### FOOTNOTE

<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.1 for reference to dimension *A*, dimension *B* and dimension *C*

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

### C.1— Axial Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>
		Class 1500			Class 2500		
2	50	14.50 (368)	—	14.63 (371)	17.75 (451)	—	17.88 (454)
2½	65	—	—	—	—	—	—
3	80	18.50 (470)	15.00 (381)	18.63 (473)	22.75 (578)	16.55 (420)	23.00 (584)
4	100	21.50 (546)	18.00 (457)	21.63 (549)	26.50 (673)	18.00 (457)	26.88 (683)
6	150	27.75 (705)	24.00 (610)	28.00 (711)	36.00 (914)	24.00 (610)	36.50 (927)
8	200	32.75 (832)	29.00 (737)	33.13 (841)	40.25 (1022)	29.00 (737)	40.88 (1038)
10	250	39.00 (991)	33.00 (838)	39.38 (1000)	50.00 (1270)	33.00 (838)	50.88 (1292)
12	300	44.50 (1130)	38.00 (965)	45.13 (1146)	56.00 (1422)	38.00 (965)	56.88 (1445)
14	350	49.50 (1257)	40.50 (1029)	50.25 (1276)	62.75 (1594)	40.50 (1029)	—
16	400	54.50 (1384)	44.50 (1130)	55.38 (1407)	70.00 (1778)	44.50 (1130)	—
18	450	60.12 (1527)	48.00 (1219)	61.00 (1549)	—	—	—
20	500	65.50 (1664)	52.00 (1321)	66.38 (1686)	—	—	—
22	550	—	—	—	—	—	—
24	600	76.26 (1937)	61.00 (1549)	77.36 (1965)	—	—	—
FOOTNOTE <sup>1</sup> See Figure B.1 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C							



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.2—Ball Valves (excluding Top Entry)—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Full Bore and Reduced Bore			Short Pattern, Full Bore, and Reduced Bore		
		Raised Face <i>A</i>	Weld End <i>B</i>	Ring Joint <i>C</i>	Raised Face <i>A</i>	Weld End <i>B</i>	Ring Joint <i>C</i>
		Class 150					
2	50	7.00 (178)	8.50 (216)	7.50 (191)	—	—	—
2½	65	7.50 (191)	9.50 (241)	8.00 (203)	—	—	—
3	80	8.00 (203)	11.13 (283)	8.50 (216)	—	—	—
4	100	9.00 (229)	12.00 (305)	9.50 (241)	—	—	—
6	150	15.50 (394)	18.00 (457)	16.00 (406)	10.50 (267)	15.88 (403)	11.00 (279)
8	200	18.00 (457)	20.50 (521)	18.50 (470)	11.50 (292)	16.50 (419)	12.00 (305)
10	250	21.00 (533)	22.00 (559)	21.50 (546)	13.00 (330)	18.00 (457)	13.50 (343)
12	300	24.00 (610)	25.00 (635)	24.50 (622)	14.00 (356)	19.75 (502)	14.50 (368)
14	350	27.00 (686)	30.00 (762)	27.50 (699)	—	—	—
16	400	30.00 (762)	33.00 (838)	30.50 (775)	—	—	—
18	450	34.00 (864)	36.00 (914)	34.50 (876)	—	—	—
20	500	36 (914)	39 (991)	36.5 (927)	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
24	600	42.00 (1067)	45.00 (1143)	42.50 (1080)	—	—	—
26	650	45.00 (1143)	49.00 (1245)	—	—	—	—
28	700	49.00 (1245)	53.00 (1346)	—	—	—	—
30	750	51.00 (1295)	55.00 (1397)	—	—	—	—
32	800	54.00 (1372)	60.00 (1524)	—	—	—	—
34	850	58.00 (1473)	64.00 (1626)	—	—	—	—
36	900	60.00 (1524)	68.00 (1727)	—	—	—	—
FOOTNOTE							
<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.2, Figure B.3 and Figure B.5 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C							

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.2—Ball Valves (excluding Top Entry)—Face -to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Full Bore and Reduced Bore			Short Pattern, Full Bore, and Reduced		
		Raised Face <i>A</i>	Weld End <i>B</i>	Ring Joint <i>C</i>	Raised Face <i>A</i>	Weld End <i>B</i>	Ring Joint <i>C</i>
		Class 300					
2	50	8.50 (216)	8.50 (216)	9.13 (232)	—	—	—
2 1/2	65	9.50 (241)	9.50 (241)	10.13 (257)	—	—	—
3	80	11.13 (283)	11.13 (283)	11.75 (298)	—	—	—
4	100	12.00 (305)	12.00 (305)	12.63 (321)	—	—	—
6	150	15.88 (403)	18.00 (457)	16.50 (419)	—	—	—
8	200	19.75 (502)	20.50 (521)	20.38 (518)	16.50 (419)	16.50 (419)	17.13 (435)
10	250	22.38 (568)	22.00 (559)	23.00 (584)	18.00 (457)	18.00 (457)	18.63 (473)
12	300	25.50 (648)	25.00 (635)	26.13 (664)	19.75 (502)	19.75 (502)	20.38 (518)
14	350	30.00 (762)	30.00 (762)	30.63 (778)	—	—	—
16	400	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.63 (854)	—	—	—
18	450	36.00 (914)	36.00 (914)	36.63 (930)	—	—	—
20	500	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.75 (1010)	—	—	—
22	550	43.00 (1092)	43.00 (1092)	43.88 (1114)	—	—	—
24	600	45.00 (1143)	45.00 (1143)	45.88 (1165)	—	—	—
26	650	49.00 (1245)	49.00 (1245)	50.00 (1270)	—	—	—
28	700	53.00 (1346)	53.00 (1346)	54.00 (1372)	—	—	—
30	750	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	56.00 (1422)	—	—	—
32	800	60.00 (1524)	60.00 (1524)	61.13 (1553)	—	—	—
34	850	64.00 (1626)	64.00 (1626)	65.13 (1654)	—	—	—
36	900	68.00 (1727)	68.00 (1727)	69.13 (1756)	—	—	—
FOOTNOTE							
<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.2, Figure B.3 and Figure B.5 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C							

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.2—Ball Valves—Face -to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Full Bore, and Reduced Bore			Full Bore, and Reduced Bore		
		Raised Face	Weld End Raised Face	Ring Joint Raised Face	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		A	A B	A B	A	B	C
		Class 600			Class 900		
2	50	11.50 (292)	11.50 (292)	11.63 (295)	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)	14.63 (371)
2 1/2	65	13.00 (330)	13.00 (330)	13.13 (333)	16.50 (419)	16.50 (419)	16.63 (422)
3	80	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	14.13 (359)	15.00 (381)	15.00 (381)	15.13 (384)
4	100	17.00 (432)	17.00 (432)	17.13 (435)	18.00 (457)	18.00 (457)	18.13 (460)
6	150	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	22.13 (562)	24.00 (610)	24.00 (610)	24.13 (613)
8	200	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	26.13 (664)	29.00 (737)	29.00 (737)	29.13 (740)
10	250	31.00 (787)	31.00 (787)	31.13 (791)	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)
12	300	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)	38.00 (965)	38.00 (965)	38.13 (968)
14	350	35.00 (889)	35.00 (889)	35.13 (892)	40.50 (1029)	40.50 (1029)	40.88 (1038)
16	400	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.13 (994)	44.50 (1130)	44.50 (1130)	44.88 (1140)
18	450	43.00 (1092)	43.00 (1092)	43.13 (1095)	48.00 (1219)	48.00 (1219)	48.50 (1232)
20	500	47.00 (1194)	47.00 (1194)	47.25 (1200)	52.00 (1321)	52.00 (1321)	52.50 (1334)
22	550	51.00 (1295)	51.00 (1295)	51.38 (1305)	—	—	—
24	600	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	55.38 (1407)	61.00 (1549)	61.00 (1549)	61.75 (1568)
26	650	57.00 (1448)	57.00 (1448)	57.50 (1461)	65.00 (1651)	—	65.88 (1673)
28	700	61.00 (1549)	61.00 (1549)	61.50 (1562)	—	—	—
30	750	65.00 (1651)	65.00 (1651)	65.50 (1664)	74.00 (1880)	—	74.88 (1902)
32	800	70.00 (1778)	70.00 (1778)	70.63 (1794)	—	—	—
34	850	76.00 (1930)	76.00 (1930)	76.63 (1946)	—	—	—
36	900	82.00 (2083)	82.00 (2083)	82.63 (2099)	90.00 (2286)	—	91.13 (2315)

**FOOTNOTE**

<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.2, Figure B.3 and Figure B.5 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.2—Ball Valves—Face -to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Full Bore and Reduced Bore			Full Bore, and Reduced Bore		
		Raised Face <i>A</i>	Weld End <i>B</i>	Ring Joint <i>C</i>	Raised Face <i>A</i>	Weld End <i>B</i>	Ring Joint <i>C</i>
			Class 1500		Class 2500		
2	50	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)	14.63 (371)	17.75 (451)	17.75 (451)	17.88 (454)
2 1/2	65	16.50 (419)	16.50 (419)	16.63 (422)	20.00 (508)	20.00 (508)	20.25 (514)
3	80	18.50 (470)	18.50 (470)	18.63 (473)	22.75 (578)	22.75 (578)	23.00 (584)
4	100	21.50 (546)	21.50 (546)	21.63 (549)	26.50 (673)	26.50 (673)	26.88 (683)
6	150	27.75 (705)	27.75 (705)	28.00 (711)	36.00 (914)	36.00 (914)	36.50 (927)
8	200	32.75 (832)	32.75 (832)	33.13 (841)	40.25 (1022)	40.25 (1022)	40.88 (1038)
10	250	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.38 (1000)	50.00 (1270)	50.00 (1270)	50.88 (1292)
12	300	44.50 (1130)	44.50 (1130)	45.13 (1146)	56.00 (1422)	56.00 (1422)	56.88 (1445)
14	350	49.50 (1257)	49.50 (1257)	50.25 (1276)	—	—	—
16	400	54.50 (1384)	54.50 (1384)	55.38 (1407)	—	—	—
18	450	60.50 (1537)	—	61.38 (1559)	—	—	—
20	500	65.50 (1664)	—	66.38 (1686)	—	—	—
22	550	—	—	—	—	—	—
24	600	—	—	77.63 (1972)	—	—	—
26	650	76.5 (1943)	—	—	—	—	—
FOOTNOTE							
<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.2, Figure B.3 and Figure B.5 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C							

**Table C.2—Ball Valves (Top-Entry)—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Short Pattern, Full Bore, and Reduced Bore		
		Raised Face <i>A</i>	Weld End <i>B</i>	Ring Joint <i>C</i>
		Class 150 and Class 300		
2	50	11.50 (292)	11.50 (292)	11.63 (295)
2 1/2	65	13.00 (330)	13.00 (330)	13.13 (333)
3	80	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	14.13 (359)
4	100	17.00 (432)	17.00 (432)	17.13 (435)
6	150	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	22.13 (562)
8	200	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	26.13 (664)
10	250	31.00 (787)	31.00 (787)	31.13 (791)
12	300	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)
14	350	35.00 (889)	35.00 (889)	35.13 (892)
16	400	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.13 (994)
18	450	43.00 (1092)	43.00 (1092)	43.13 (1095)
20	500	47.00 (1194)	47.00 (1194)	47.25 (1200)
22	550	51.00 (1295)	51.00 (1295)	51.38 (1305)
24	600	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	55.38 (1407)
26	650	57.00 (1448)	57.00 (1448)	57.50 (1461)
28	700	61.00 (1549)	61.00 (1549)	61.50 (1562)
30	750	65.00 (1651)	65.00 (1651)	65.50 (1664)
32	800	70.00 (1778)	70.00 (1778)	70.63 (1794)
34	850	76.00 (1930)	76.00 (1930)	76.63 (1946)
36	900	82.00 (2083)	82.00 (2083)	82.63 (2099)
FOOTNOTE				
<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.4 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C				

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.3—Check Valves and Axial Check Valves<sup>6</sup>, Full-opening and Reduced Types—Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Long Pattern Raised Face / Weld End	Long Pattern Ring Joint	Short Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint	Compact Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint
		A/B	C	A/C	A/C
		Class 150			
½	15	4.25 (108)	-	1.96 (50)	
¾	20	4.60 (117)	-	2.36 (60)	
1	25	5.00 (127)	5.50 (140)	4.00 (100)	
1¼	32	5.50 (140)	6.00 (153)	4.00 (100)	
1½	40	6.50 (165)	7.00 (178)	4.72 (120)	
2	50	8.00 (203)	8.50 (216)	4.72 (120)	
2½	65	8.50 (216)	9.00 (229)	4.75 (120)	
3	80	9.50 (241)	10.00 (254)	4.75 (120)	
4	100	11.50 (292)	12.00 (305)	5.50 (140)	
6	150	14.00 (356)	14.50 (368)	8.27 (210)	
8	200	19.50 (495)	20.00 (508)	11.02 (280)	
10	250	24.50 (622)	25.00(635)	13.78 (350)	
12	300	27.50 (699)	28.00 (711)	13.78 (350)	7.25 (181)
14	350	31.00 (787)	31.50 (800)	15.94 (405)	8.75 (222)
16	400	34.00 (864)	34.50 (876)	17.91 (455)	9.75 (245)
18	450	38.50 (978)	39.00 (991)	20.47 (520)	10.50 (264)
20	500	38.50 (978)	39.00 (991)	22.44 (570)	12.00 (305)
22	550	42.00 (1067)	42.50 (1080)	22.44 (570)	13.78 (350)
24	600	51.00 (1295)	51.50 (1308)	26.97 (685)	14.50 (370)
26	650	51.00 (1295)	—	29.33 (745)	14.50 (370)
28	700	57.00 (1448)	—	31.50 (800)	17.00 (430)
30	750	60.00 (1524)	—	33.66 (855)	18.00 (460)
32	800	—	—	35.83 (910)	19.75 (500)
34	850	—	—	38.19 (970)	20.87 (530)
36	900	77.00 (1956)	—	40.55 (1030)	24.00 (600)
38	950	—	—	44.69 (1135)	23.23 (590)
40	1000	—	—	44.69 (1135)	25.50 (650)
42	1050	—	—	47.05 (1195)	26.25 (670)
48	1200	—	—	53.74 (1365)	29.25 (740)
54	1350	—	—	60.24 (1530)	32.68 (830)
56	1400	—	—	62.99 (1600)	33.46 (850)
60	1500	—	—	67.32 (1710)	38.19 (970)
FOOTNOTE					
¹ See Figure B.6, Figure B.7, Figure B.10 and Figure B.11 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C					

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.3—Check Valves and Axial Check Valves, Full-opening and Reduced Types—Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**  
(continued)

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Long Pattern Raised Face / Weld End A/B	Long Pattern Ring Joint C	Short Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint A/C	Compact Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint A/C
		Class 300			
½	15	—	—	1.96 (50)	
¾	20	—	—	2.36 (60)	
1	25	8.50 (216)	9.00 (229)	4.00 (100)	
1¼	32	9.00 (229)	9.50 (242)	4.00 (100)	
1½	40	9.50 (241)	10.00 (254)	4.72 (120)	
2	50	10.50 (267)	11.13 (283)	4.72 (120)	
2½	65	11.50 (292)	12.13 (308)	5.91 (150)	
3	80	12.50 (318)	13.13 (333)	5.91 (150)	
4	100	14.00 (356)	14.63 (371)	6.69 (170)	
6	150	17.50 (445)	18.13 (460)	8.27 (210)	
8	200	21.00 (533)	21.63 (549)	11.02 (280)	
10	250	24.50 (622)	25.13 (638)	13.78 (350)	
12	300	28.00 (711)	28.63 (727)	13.78 (350)	7.25 (181)
14	350	33.00 (838)	33.63 (854)	15.94 (405)	8.75 (222)
16	400	34.00 (864)	34.63 (879)	17.91 (455)	9.75 (245)
18	450	38.50 (978)	39.13 (994)	20.47 (520)	10.50 (264)
20	500	40.00 (1016)	40.75 (1035)	22.44 (570)	12.00 (305)
22	550	44.00 (1118)	44.88 (1140)	22.44 (570)	—
24	600	53.00 (1346)	53.88 (1368)	26.97 (685)	14.50 (370)
26	650	53.00 (1346)	54.00 (1372)	29.33 (745)	—
28	700	59.00 (1499)	60.00 (1524)	31.50 (800)	17.00 (430)
30	750	62.75 (1594)	63.75 (1619)	33.66 (855)	18.00 (460)
32	800	—	—	35.83 (910)	19.75 (500)
34	850	—	—	38.19 (970)	—
36	900	82.00 (2083)	83.10 (2111)	40.55 (1030)	24.00 (600)
38	950	—	—	44.69 (1135)	—
40	1000	—	—	44.69 (1135)	25.50 (650)
42	1050	—	—	47.05 (1195)	28.25 (720)
48	1200	—	—	53.74 (1365)	33.00 (840)
54	1350	—	—	60.24 (1530)	—
56	1400	—	—	62.99 (1600)	33.46 (850)
60	1500	—	—	67.32 (1710)	—

**FOOTNOTE**

<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.6, Figure B.7, Figure B.10 and Figure B.11 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.3—Check Valves and Axial Check Valves, Full-opening and Reduced Types—Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**  
(continued)

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Long Pattern Raised Face / Weld End	Long Pattern Ring Joint	Short Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint	Compact Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint
		A/B	C	A/C	A/C
		Class 600			
½	15	6.50 (165)	6.50 (165)	1.96 (50)	
¾	20	7.50 (190)	7.50 (190)	2.36 (60)	
1	25	8.50 (216)	8.50 (216)	4.00 (100)	
1¼	32	9.00 (229)	9.00 (229)	4.00 (100)	
1½	40	9.50 (241)	9.50 (241)	4.72 (120)	
2	50	11.50 (292)	11.63 (295)	4.72 (120)	
2½	65	13.00 (330)	13.13 (333)	5.91 (150)	
3	80	14.00 (356)	14.13 (359)	5.91 (150)	
4	100	17.00 (432)	17.13 (435)	6.69 (170)	
6	150	22.00 (559)	22.13 (562)	8.27 (210)	
8	200	26.00 (660)	26.13 (664)	11.02 (280)	
10	250	31.00 (787)	31.13 (791)	13.78 (350)	
12	300	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)	14.76 (375)	9.00 (229)
14	350	35.00 (889)	35.13 (892)	17.32 (440)	10.75 (273)
16	400	39.00 (991)	39.13 (994)	19.69 (500)	12.00 (305)
18	450	43.00 (1092)	43.13 (1095)	22.24 (565)	14.25 (362)
20	500	47.00 (1194)	47.25 (1200)	24.61 (625)	14.50 (368)
22	550	51.00 (1295)	51.38 (1305)	26.97 (685)	—
24	600	55.00 (1397)	55.38 (1407)	29.33 (745)	17.25 (438)
26	650	57.00 (1448)	57.50 (1461)	31.89 (810)	18.11 (460)
28	700	63.00 (1600)	63.50 (1613)	34.25 (870)	19.00 (480)
30	750	65.00 (1651)	65.50 (1664)	36.61 (930)	20.00 (505)
32	800	—	—	38.98 (990)	23.00 (584)
34	850	—	—	41.54 (1055)	—
36	900	82.00 (2083)	82.64 (2099)	44.09 (1120)	25.00 (635)
38	950	—	—	45.26 (1175)	—
40	1000	—	—	48.82 (1240)	32.25 (820)
42	1050	—	—	51.18 (1300)	34.25 (870)
48	1200	—	—	58.46 (1485)	38.25 (970)
54	1350	—	—	65.75 (1670)	—
56	1400	—	—	68.11 (1730)	38.25 (970)
60	1500	—	—	73.03 (1855)	—

FOOTNOTE  
¹ See Figure B.6, Figure B.7, Figure B.10 and Figure B.11 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.3—Check Valves and Axial Check Valves, Full-opening and Reduced Types—Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**  
(continued)

NPS	DN	Long Pattern Raised Face / Weld End A/B	Long Pattern Ring Joint C	Short Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint A/C	Compact Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint A/C
		Class 900			
½	15	—	—	2.17 (55)	
¾	20	9.00 (229)	9.00 (229)	2.36 (60)	
1	25	10.00 (254)	10.00 (254)	6.00 (150)	
1¼	32	11.00 (279)	11.00 (279)	6.00 (150)	
1½	40	12.00 (305)	12.00 (305)	6.70 (170)	
2	50	14.50 (368)	14.63 (371)	6.70 (170)	
2½	65	16.50 (419)	16.63 (422)	7.48 (190)	
3	80	15.00 (381)	15.13 (384)	7.48 (190)	
4	100	18.00 (457)	18.13 (460)	8.27 (210)	
6	150	24.00 (610)	24.13 (613)	9.06 (230)	
8	200	29.00 (737)	29.13 (740)	11.02 (280)	
10	250	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)	13.78 (350)	
12	300	38.00 (965)	38.13 (968)	16.93 (430)	12.25 (310)
14	350	40.50 (1029)	40.88 (1038)	15.75 (400)	14.00 (356)
16	400	44.50 (1130)	44.88 (1140)	18.50 (470)	15.00 (384)
18	450	48.00 (1219)	48.50 (1232)	20.87 (530)	16.50 (420)
20	500	52.00 (1321)	52.50 (1334)	23.43 (595)	17.00 (430)
22	550	—	—	24.80 (630)	—
24	600	61.00 (1549)	61.75 (1568)	26.18 (665)	19.50 (495)
26	650	—	—	31.30 (795)	—
28	700	—	—	33.86 (860)	21.25 (540)
30	750	—	—	36.42 (925)	22.00 (560)
32	800	—	—	36.42 (925)	24.75 (580)
34	850	—	—	38.98 (990)	—
36	900	—	—	41.34 (1050)	27.00 (690)
38	950	—	—	44.29 (1125)	—
40	1000	—	—	46.65 (1185)	38.25 (970)
42	1050	—	—	49.21 (1250)	43.25 (1100)
48	1200	—	—	57.09 (1450)	49.25 (1250)
FOOTNOTE					
<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.6, Figure B.7, Figure B.10 and Figure B.11 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C					

**Table C.3—Check Valves and Axial Check Valves, Full-opening and Reduced Types—Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**  
(continued)

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Long Pattern Raised Face / Weld End	Long Pattern Ring Joint	Short Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint	Compact Pattern Raised Face and Ring Joint
		A/B	C	A/C	A/C
		Class 1500			
½	15	8.50 (216)	8.50 (216)	2.17 (55)	
¾	20	9.00 (229)	9.00 (229)	2.36 (60)	
1	25	10.00 (254)	10.00 (254)	6.00 (150)	
1¼	32	11.00 (279)	11.00 (279)	6.00 (150)	
1½	40	12.00 (305)	12.00 (305)	6.70 (170)	
2	50	14.50 (368)	14.63 (371)	6.70 (170)	
2½	65	16.50 (419)	16.63 (422)	7.48 (190)	
3	80	18.50 (470)	18.63 (473)	8.66 (220)	
4	100	21.50 (546)	21.63 (549)	9.45 (240)	
6	150	27.75 (705)	28.00 (711)	12.20 (310)	
8	200	32.75 (832)	33.13 (841)	13.78 (350)	
10	250	39.00 (991)	39.38 (1000)	15.75 (400)	
12	300	44.50 (1130)	45.13 (1146)	17.72 (450)	—
14	350	49.50 (1257)	50.25 (1276)	19.29 (490)	—
16	400	54.50 (1384)	55.38 (1407)	20.87 (530)	—
18	450	60.50 (1537)	61.38 (1559)	22.83 (580)	—
20	500	65.50 (1664)	66.38 (1686)	25.79 (655)	—
22	550	—	—	—	—
24	600	76.50 (1943)	77.63 (1972)	29.53 (750)	—
Class 2500					
½	15	10.40 (264)	10.40 (264)	2.36 (60)	
¾	20	10.75 (273)	10.75 (273)	2.56 (65)	
1	25	12.13 (308)	12.13 (308)	6.30 (160)	
1¼	32	13.75 (349)	13.86 (352)	7.00 (180)	
1½	40	15.12 (384)	15.25 (387)	8.27 (210)	
2	50	17.75 (451)	17.88 (454)	8.27 (210)	
2½	65	20.00 (508)	20.25 (514)	9.45 (240)	
3	80	22.75 (578)	23.00 (584)	10.63 (270)	
4	100	26.50 (673)	26.88 (683)	12.20 (310)	
6	150	36.00 (914)	36.50 (927)	139.93 (430)	
8	200	40.25 (1022)	40.88 (1038)	18.11 (460)	
10	250	50.00 (1270)	50.88 (1292)	22.83 (580)	
12	300	56.00 (1422)	56.88 (1445)	22.83 (580)	—
FOOTNOTE					
¹ See Figure B.6, Figure B.7, Figure B.10 and Figure B.11 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C					

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.4—Single- and Dual-plate, Long- and Short-pattern, Wafer-type, and Double Flanged Check Valves—Face-to-face Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Class 150			Class 300			Class 600		
		Short Pattern	Long Pattern	Double Flange	Short Pattern	Long Pattern	Double Flange	Short Pattern	Long Pattern	Double Flange
2	50	0.75 (19)	2.38 (60)	4.50 (114)	0.75 (19)	2.38 (60)	4.50 (114)	0.75 (19)	2.38 (60)	4.75 (121)
2½	65	0.75 (19)	2.63 (67)	— —	0.75 (19)	2.63 (67)	— —	0.75 (19)	2.63 (67)	— —
3	80	0.75 (19)	2.88 (73)	4.75 (121)	0.75 (19)	2.88 (73)	4.75 (121)	0.75 (19)	2.88 (73)	5.63 (143)
4	100	0.75 (19)	2.88 (73)	4.75 (121)	0.75 (19)	2.88 (73)	4.75 (121)	0.88 (22)	3.13 (79)	6.50 (165)
6	150	0.75 (19)	3.88 (98)	5.12 (130)	0.88 (22)	3.88 (98)	5.12 (130)	1.13 (29)	5.38 (137)	7.63 (194)
8	200	1.13 (29)	5.00 (127)	5.00 (127)	1.13 (29)	5.00 (127)	6.00 (152)	1.50 (38)	6.50 (165)	8.63 (219)
10	250	1.13 (29)	5.75 (146)	5.75 (146)	1.50 (38)	5.75 (146)	7.00 (178)	2.25 (57)	8.38 (213)	9.63 (244)
12	300	1.50 (38)	7.13 (181)	7.13 (181)	2.00 (51)	7.13 (181)	7.13 (181)	2.38 (60)	9.00 (229)	9.00 (229)
14	350	1.75 (44)	7.25 (184)	7.25 (184)	2.00 (51)	8.75 (222)	8.75 (222)	2.63 (67)	10.75 (273)	10.75 (273)
16	400	2.00 (51)	7.50 (191)	7.50 (191)	2.00 (51)	9.13 (232)	9.13 (232)	2.88 (73)	12.00 (305)	12.00 (305)
18	450	2.38 (60)	8.00 (203)	8.00 (203)	3.00 (76)	10.38 (264)	10.38 (264)	3.25 (83)	14.25 (362)	14.25 (362)
20	500	2.50 (64)	8.63 (219)	8.63 (219)	3.25 (83)	11.50 (292)	11.50 (292)	3.63 (92)	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)
24	600	— —	8.75 (222)	8.75 (222)	— —	12.50 (318)	12.50 (318)	— —	17.25 (438)	17.25 (438)
26	650	— —	8.75 (222)	8.75 (222)	— —	12.50 (318)	12.50 (318)	— —	18.00 (457)	18.00 (457)
28	700	— —	12.00 (305)	12.00 (305)	— —	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)	— —	19.00 (483)	19.00 (483)
30	750	— —	12.00 (305)	12.00 (305)	— —	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)	— —	19.88 (505)	19.88 (505)
32	800	— —	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	— —	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)	— —	21.00 (533)	21.00 (533)
36	900	— —	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)	— —	19.00 (483)	19.00 (483)	— —	25.00 (635)	25.00 (635)
40	1000	— —	17.00 (432)	17.00 (432)	— —	21.50 (546)	21.50 (546)	— —	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)
42	1050	—	17.00	17.00	—	22.38	22.38	—	27.62	27.62

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

		—	(432)	(432)	—	(568)	(568)	—	(702)	(702)
48	1200	—	20.62 (524)	20.62 (524)	—	24.75 (629)	24.75 (629)	—	31.00 (787)	31.00 (787)
54	1350	—	23.25 (591)	23.25 (591)	—	28.25 (718)	28.25 (718)	—	—	—
60	1500	—	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	—	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	—	—	—
FOOTNOTE <sup>1</sup> See Figure B.8 and Figure B.9 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C										

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.4—Single- and Dual-plate, Long- and Short-pattern, Wafer-type, and Double Flanged Check Valves—Face-to-face Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Class 900			Class 1500			Class 2500		
		Short Pattern	Long Pattern	Double Flange	Short Pattern	Long Pattern	Double Flange	Short Pattern	Long Pattern	Double Flange
2	50	0.75 (19)	2.75 (70)	6.50 (165)	0.75 (19)	2.75 (70)	6.50 (165)	— —	2.75 (70)	8.87 (225)
2½	65	0.75 (19)	3.25 (83)	— —	0.75 (19)	3.25 (83)	— —	— —	3.25 (83)	— —
3	80	0.75 (19)	3.25 (83)	6.50 (165)	0.88 (22)	3.25 (83)	8.12 (207)	— —	3.38 (86)	11.00 (280)
4	100	0.88 (22)	4.00 (102)	7.75 (197)	1.25 (32)	4.00 (102)	8.87 (225)	— —	4.13 (105)	13.00 (330)
6	150	1.38 (35)	6.25 (159)	8.63 (219)	1.75 (44)	6.25 (159)	11.37 (292)	— —	6.25 (159)	17.87 (454)
8	200	1.75 (44)	8.13 (206)	10.00 (254)	2.25 (57)	8.13 (206)	13.37 (340)	— —	8.13 (206)	19.25 (489)
10	250	2.25 (57)	9.50 (241)	10.50 (267)	2.88 (73)	9.75 (248)	15.25 (387)	— —	10.00 (254)	24.50 (622)
12	300	— —	11.50 (292)	11.50 (292)	— —	12.00 (305)	17.12 (435)	— —	12.00 (305)	27.00 (686)
14	350	— —	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	— —	14.00 (356)	18.75 (476)	— —	— —	— —
16	400	— —	15.13 (384)	15.13 (384)	— —	15.13 (384)	21.15 (537)	— —	— —	— —
18	450	— —	17.75 (451)	17.75 (451)	— —	18.44 (468)	22.25 (565)	— —	— —	— —
20	500	— —	17.75 (451)	17.75 (451)	— —	21.00 (533)	24.75 (629)	— —	— —	— —
24	600	— —	19.50 (495)	19.50 (495)	— —	22.00 (559)	28.87 (733)	— —	— —	— —
26	650	— —	21.00 (533)	21.00 (533)	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
28	700	— —	22.50 (572)	22.50 (572)	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
30	750	— —	25.00 (635)	25.00 (635)	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
32	800	— —	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
36	900	— —	28.25 (718)	28.25 (718)	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

40	1000	— —	30.00 (762)	30.00 (762)	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
42	1100	— —	31.00 (787)	31.00 (787)	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
FOOTNOTE <sup>1</sup> See Figure B.8 and Figure B.9 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C										

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.5—Gate Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>
		Class 150			Class 300		
2	50	7.00 (178)	8.50 (216)	7.50 (191)	8.50 (216)	8.50 (216)	9.13 (232)
2½	65	7.50 (191)	9.50 (241)	8.00 (203)	9.50 (241)	9.50 (241)	10.13 (257)
3	80	8.00 (203)	11.13 (283)	8.50 (216)	11.13 (283)	11.13 (283)	11.75 (298)
4	100	9.00 (229)	12.00 (305)	9.50 (241)	12.00 (305)	12.00 (305)	12.63 (321)
6	150	10.50 (267)	15.88 (403)	11.00 (279)	15.88 (403)	15.88 (403)	16.50 (419)
8	200	11.50 (292)	16.50 (419)	12.00 (305)	16.50 (419)	16.50 (419)	17.13 (435)
10	250	13.00 (330)	18.00 (457)	13.50 (343)	18.00 (457)	18.00 (457)	18.63 (473)
12	300	14.00 (356)	19.75 (502)	14.50 (368)	19.75 (502)	19.75 (502)	20.38 (518)
14	350	15.00 (381)	22.50 (572)	15.50 (394)	30.00 (762)	30.00 (762)	30.63 (778)
16	400	16.00 (406)	24.00 (610)	16.50 (419)	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.63 (854)
18	450	17.00 (432)	26.00 (660)	17.50 (445)	36.00 (914)	36.00 (914)	36.63 (930)
20	500	18.00 (457)	28.00 (711)	18.50 (470)	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.75 (1010)
22	550	—	—	—	43.00 (1092)	43.00 (1092)	43.88 (1114)
24	600	20.00 (508)	32.00 (813)	20.50 (521)	45.00 (1143)	45.00 (1143)	45.88 (1165)
26	650	22.00 (559)	34.00 (864)	—	49.00 (1245)	49.00 (1245)	50.00 (1270)
28	700	24.00 (610)	36.00 (914)	—	53.00 (1346)	53.00 (1346)	54.00 (1372)
30	750	26.00 (660)	36.00 (914)	—	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	56.00 (1422)
32	800	28.00 (711)	38.00 (965)	—	60.00 (1524)	60.00 (1524)	61.13 (1553)
34	850	30.00 (762)	40.00 (1016)	—	64.00 (1626)	64.00 (1626)	65.13 (1654)
36	900	32.00 (813)	40.00 (1016)	—	68.00 (1727)	68.00 (1727)	69.13 (1756)

**FOOTNOTES**

Tolerance: ±0.06 in. (1.5 mm) on valve sizes 10 in. and smaller

±0.12 in. (3.0 mm) on valve sizes 12 in. and larger

<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.13 and Figure B.14 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.5—Gate Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>
		Class 600			Class 900		
2	50	11.50 (292)	11.50 (292)	11.63 (295)	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)	14.63 (371)
2 1/2	65	13.00 (330)	13.00 (330)	13.13 (333)	16.50 (419)	16.50 (419)	16.63 (422)
3	80	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	14.13 (359)	15.00 (381)	15.00 (381)	15.13 (384)
4	100	17.00 (432)	17.00 (432)	17.13 (435)	18.00 (457)	18.00 (457)	18.13 (460)
6	150	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	22.13 (562)	24.00 (610)	24.00 (610)	24.13 (613)
8	200	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	26.13 (664)	29.00 (737)	29.00 (737)	29.13 (740)
10	250	31.00 (787)	31.00 (787)	31.13 (791)	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)
12	300	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)	38.00 (965)	38.00 (965)	38.13 (968)
14	350	35.00 (889)	35.00 (889)	35.13 (892)	40.50 (1029)	40.50 (1029)	40.88 (1038)
16	400	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.13 (994)	44.50 (1130)	44.50 (1130)	44.88 (1140)
18	450	43.00 (1092)	43.00 (1092)	43.13 (1095)	48.00 (1219)	48.00 (1219)	48.50 (1232)
20	500	47.00 (1194)	47.00 (1194)	47.25 (1200)	52.00 (1321)	52.00 (1321)	52.50 (1334)
22	550	51.00 (1295)	51.00 (1295)	51.38 (1305)	—	—	—
24	600	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	55.38 (1407)	61.00 (1549)	61.00 (1549)	61.75 (1568)
26	650	57.00 (1448)	57.00 (1448)	57.50 (1461)	—	—	—
28	700	61.00 (1549)	61.00 (1549)	61.50 (1562)	—	—	—
30	750	65.00 (1651)	65.00 (1651)	65.50 (1664)	—	—	—
32	800	70.00 (1778)	70.00 (1778)	70.63 (1794)	—	—	—
34	850	76.00 (1930)	76.00 (1930)	76.63 (1946)	—	—	—
36	900	82.00 (2083)	82.00 (2083)	82.63 (2099)	—	—	—
<b>FOOTNOTES</b> Tolerance: ±0.06 in. (1.5 mm) on valve sizes 10 in. and smaller ±0.12 in. (3.0 mm) on valve sizes 12 in. and larger <sup>1</sup> See Figure B.13 and Figure B.14 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C							



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.5—Gate Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>
		Class 1500			Class 2500		
2	50	14.50 (368)	14.50 (368)	14.63 (371)	17.75 (451)	17.75 (451)	17.88 (454)
2½	65	16.50 (419)	16.50 (419)	16.63 (422)	20.00 (508)	20.00 (508)	20.25 (514)
3	80	18.50 (470)	18.50 (470)	18.63 (473)	22.75 (578)	22.75 (578)	23.00 (584)
4	100	21.50 (546)	21.50 (546)	21.63 (549)	26.50 (673)	26.50 (673)	26.88 (683)
6	150	27.75 (705)	27.75 (705)	28.00 (711)	36.00 (914)	36.00 (914)	36.50 (927)
8	200	32.75 (832)	32.75 (832)	33.13 (841)	40.25 (1022)	40.25 (1022)	40.88 (1038)
10	250	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.38 (1000)	50.00 (1270)	50.00 (1270)	50.88 (1292)
12	300	44.50 (1130)	44.50 (1130)	45.13 (1146)	56.00 (1422)	56.00 (1422)	56.88 (1445)
14	350	49.50 (1257)	49.50 (1257)	50.25 (1276)	—	—	—
16	400	54.50 (1384)	54.50 (1384)	55.38 (1407)	—	—	—
18	450	60.50 (1537)	60.50 (1537)	61.38 (1559)	—	—	—
20	500	65.50 (1664)	65.50 (1664)	66.38 (1686)	—	—	—
22	550	—	—	—	—	—	—
24	60	76.50 (1943)	76.50 (1943)	77.63 (1972)	—	—	—
<b>FOOTNOTES</b> Tolerance: ±0.06 in. (1.5 mm) on valve sizes 10 in. and smaller ±0.12 in. (3.0 mm) on valve sizes 12 in. and larger <sup>1</sup> See Figure B.13 and Figure B.14 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C							

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.6—Plug Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup>**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Short Pattern			Regular Pattern			Venturi Pattern			Round Port, Full Bore		
		Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		A	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	C
		Class 150											
2	50	7.00 (178)	10.50 (267)	7.50 (191)	—	—	—	—	—	—	10.50 (267)	—	11.00 (279)
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	65	7.50 (191)	12.00 (305)	8.00 (203)	—	—	—	—	—	—	11.75 (298)	—	12.25 (311)
3	80	8.00 (203)	13.00 (330)	8.50 (216)	—	—	—	—	—	—	13.50 (343)	—	14.00 (356)
4	100	9.00 (229)	14.00 (356)	9.50 (241)	—	—	—	—	—	—	17.00 (432)	—	17.50 (445)
6	150	10.50 (267)	18.00 (457)	11.00 (279)	15.50 (394)	—	16.00 (406)	—	—	—	21.50 (546)	—	22.00 (559)
8	200	11.50 (292)	20.50 (521)	12.00 (305)	18.00 (457)	—	18.50 (470)	—	—	—	24.50 (622)	—	25.00 (635)
10	250	13.00 (330)	22.00 (559)	13.50 (343)	21.00 (533)	—	21.50 (546)	21.00 (533)	22.00 (559)	21.50 (546)	26.00 (660)	—	26.50 (673)
12	300	14.00 (356)	25.00 (635)	14.50 (368)	24.00 (610)	—	24.50 (622)	24.00 (610)	25.00 (635)	24.50 (622)	30.00 (762)	—	30.50 (775)
14	350	—	—	—	—	—	—	27.00 (686)	27.00 (686)	27.50 (699)	—	—	—
16	400	—	—	—	—	—	—	30.00 (762)	30.00 (762)	30.50 (775)	—	—	—
18	450	—	—	—	—	—	—	34.00 (864)	34.00 (864)	34.50 (876)	—	—	—
20	500	—	—	—	—	—	—	36.00 (914)	36.00 (914)	36.50 (927)	—	—	—
24	600	—	—	—	—	—	—	42.00 (1067)	42.00 (1067)	42.50 (1080)	—	—	—
FOOTNOTE													
<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.15 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C													

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.6—Plug Valves—Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Short Pattern			Regular Pattern			Venturi Pattern			Round Port, Full Bore		
		Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		A	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	C
		Class 300											
2	50	8.50 (216)	10.50 (267)	9.13 (232)	—	—	—	—	—	—	11.13 (283)	11.13 (283)	11.75 (298)
2 1/2	65	9.50 (241)	12.00 (305)	10.13 (257)	—	—	—	—	—	—	13.00 (330)	13.00 (330)	13.63 (346)
3	80	11.13 (283)	13.00 (330)	11.75 (298)	—	—	—	—	—	—	15.25 (387)	15.25 (387)	15.88 (403)
4	100	12.00 (305)	14.00 (356)	12.63 (321)	—	—	—	—	—	—	18.00 (457)	18.00 (457)	18.63 (473)
6	150	15.88 (403)	18.00 (457)	16.50 (419)	15.88 (403)	—	16.50 (419)	15.88 (403)	18.00 (457)	16.50 (419)	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	22.63 (575)
8	200	16.50 (419)	20.50 (521)	17.13 (435)	19.75 (502)	—	20.38 (518)	16.50 (419)	20.50 (521)	17.13 (435)	27.00 (686)	27.00 (686)	27.63 (702)
10	250	18.00 (457)	22.00 (559)	18.63 (473)	22.38 (568)	—	23.00 (584)	18.00 (457)	22.00 (559)	18.63 (473)	32.50 (826)	32.50 (826)	33.13 (841)
12	300	19.75 (502)	25.00 (635)	20.38 (518)	—	—	—	19.75 (502)	25.00 (635)	20.38 (518)	38.00 (965)	38.00 (965)	38.63 (981)
14	350	—	—	—	—	—	—	30.00 (762)	30.00 (762)	30.63 (778)	—	—	—
16	400	—	—	—	—	—	—	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.63 (854)	—	—	—
18	450	—	—	—	36.00 (914)	—	36.63 (930)	36.00 (914)	36.00 (914)	36.63 (930)	—	—	—
20	500	—	—	—	39.00 (991)	—	39.75 (1010)	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.75 (1010)	—	—	—
22	550	—	—	—	43.00 (1092)	—	43.88 (1114)	43.00 (1092)	43.00 (1092)	43.88 (1114)	—	—	—
24	600	—	—	—	45.00 (1143)	—	45.88 (1165)	45.00 (1143)	45.00 (1143)	45.88 (1165)	—	—	—
26	650	—	—	—	49.00 (1245)	—	50.00 (1270)	49.00 (1245)	49.00 (1245)	50.00 (1270)	—	—	—
28	700	—	—	—	53.00 (1346)	—	54.00 (1372)	53.00 (1346)	53.00 (1346)	54.00 (1372)	—	—	—
30	750	—	—	—	55.00 (1397)	—	56.00 (1422)	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	56.00 (1422)	—	—	—
32	800	—	—	—	60.00 (1524)	—	61.13 (1553)	60.00 (1524)	60.00 (1524)	61.13 (1553)	—	—	—
34	850	—	—	—	64.00 (1626)	—	65.13 (1654)	64.00 (1626)	64.00 (1626)	65.13 (1654)	—	—	—
36	900	—	—	—	68.00 (1727)	—	69.13 (1756)	68.00 (1727)	68.00 (1727)	69.13 (1756)	—	—	—

**FOOTNOTE**

<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.15 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.6—Plug Valves—Face-to-face (A) and End-to-end (B and C) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Regular Pattern			Venturi Pattern			Round Port, Full Bore		
		Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		A	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	C
		Class 600								
2	50	11.50 (292)	11.50 (292)	11.63 (295)	—	—	—	13.00 (330)	—	13.13 (333)
2 1/2	65	13.00 (330)	13.00 (330)	13.13 (333)	—	—	—	15.00 (381)	—	15.13 (384)
3	80	14.00 (356)	14.00 (356)	14.13 (359)	—	—	—	17.50 (445)	—	17.63 (448)
4	100	17.00 (432)	17.00 (432)	17.13 (435)	—	—	—	20.00 (508)	22.00 (559)	20.13 (511)
6	150	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	22.13 (562)	22.00 (559)	22.00 (559)	22.13 (562)	26.00 (660)	28.00 (711)	26.13 (664)
8	200	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	26.13 (664)	26.00 (660)	26.00 (660)	26.13 (664)	31.25 (794)	33.25 (845)	31.38 (797)
10	250	31.00 (787)	31.00 (787)	31.13 (791)	31.00 (787)	31.00 (787)	31.13 (791)	37.00 (940)	40.00 (1016)	37.13 (943)
12	300	—	—	—	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)	42.00 (1067)	42.00 (1067)	42.13 (1070)
14	350	—	—	—	35.00 (889)	35.00 (889)	35.13 (892)	—	—	—
16	400	—	—	—	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.13 (994)	—	—	—
18	450	—	—	—	43.00 (1092)	43.00 (1092)	43.13 (1095)	—	—	—
20	500	—	—	—	47.00 (1194)	47.00 (1194)	47.25 (1200)	—	—	—
22	550	—	—	—	51.00 (1295)	51.00 (1295)	51.38 (1305)	—	—	—
24	600	—	—	—	55.00 (1397)	55.00 (1397)	55.38 (1407)	—	—	—
26	650	—	—	—	57.00 (1448)	57.00 (1448)	57.50 (1461)	—	—	—
30	750	—	—	—	65.00 (1651)	65.00 (1651)	65.50 (1664)	—	—	—
32	800	—	—	—	70.00 (1778)	70.00 (1778)	70.63 (1794)	—	—	—
34	850	—	—	—	76.00 (1930)	76.00 (1930)	76.63 (1946)	—	—	—
36	900	—	—	—	82.00 (2083)	82.00 (2083)	82.63 (2099)	—	—	—
FOOTNOTE										
<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.15 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C										

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

## C.6—Plug Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions (Continued)

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Regular Pattern			Venturi Pattern			Round Port, Full Bore		
		Raised Face	Welding End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Welding End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Welding End	Ring Joint
		A	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	C
		Class 900								
2	50	14.50 (368)	—	14.63 (371)	—	—	—	15.00 (381)	—	15.13 (384)
2 1/2	65	16.50 (419)	—	16.63 (422)	—	—	—	17.00 (432)	—	17.13 (435)
3	80	15.00 (381)	15.00 (381)	15.13 (384)	—	—	—	18.50 (470)	—	18.63 (473)
4	100	18.00 (457)	18.00 (457)	18.13 (460)	—	—	—	22.00 (559)	—	22.13 (562)
6	150	24.00 (610)	24.00 (610)	24.13 (613)	24.00 (610)	24.00 (610)	24.13 (613)	29.00 (737)	—	29.13 (740)
8	200	29.00 (737)	29.00 (737)	29.13 (740)	29.00 (737)	29.00 (737)	29.13 (740)	32.00 (813)	—	32.13 (816)
10	250	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)	33.00 (838)	33.00 (838)	33.13 (841)	38.00 (965)	—	38.13 (968)
12	300	—	—	—	38.00 (965)	38.00 (965)	38.13 (968)	44.00 (1118)	—	44.13 (1121)
16	400	—	—	—	44.50 (1130)	44.50 (1130)	44.88 (1140)	—	—	—

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table C.6—Plug Valves—Face-to-face (*A*) and End-to-end (*B* and *C*) Dimensions<sup>1</sup> (continued)**

Dimensions in inches (millimeters)

NPS	DN	Regular Pattern			Venturi Pattern			Round Port, Full Bore		
		Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint	Raised Face	Weld End	Ring Joint
		A	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	C
		Class 1500								
2	50	14.50 (368)	—	14.63 (371)	—	—	—	15.38 (391)	—	15.50 (394)
2½	65	16.50 (419)	—	16.63 (422)	—	—	—	17.88 (454)	—	18.00 (457)
3	80	18.50 (470)	18.50 (470)	18.63 (473)	—	—	—	20.63 (524)	—	20.75 (527)
4	100	21.50 (546)	21.50 (546)	21.63 (549)	—	—	—	24.63 (625)	—	24.75 (629)
6	150	27.75 (705)	27.75 (705)	28.00 (711)	27.75 (705)	27.75 (705)	28.00 (711)	31.00 (787)	—	31.25 (794)
8	200	32.75 (832)	32.75 (832)	33.13 (841)	32.75 (832)	32.75 (832)	33.13 (841)	35.00 (889)	—	35.38 (899)
10	250	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.38 (1000)	39.00 (991)	39.00 (991)	39.38 (1000)	42.00 (1067)	—	42.38 (1076)
12	300	44.50 (1130)	44.50 (1130)	45.13 (1146)	44.50 (1130)	44.50 (1130)	45.13 (1146)	48.00 (1219)	—	48.63 (1235)
Class 2500										
2	50	17.75 (451)	—	17.88 (454)	—	—	—	—	—	—
2 ½	65	20.00 (508)	—	20.25 (514)	—	—	—	—	—	—
3	80	22.75 (578)	—	23.00 (584)	—	—	—	—	—	—
4	100	26.50 (673)	—	26.88 (683)	—	—	—	—	—	—
6	150	36.00 (914)	—	36.50 (927)	—	—	—	—	—	—
8	200	40.25 (1022)	—	40.88 (1038)	—	—	—	—	—	—
10	250	50.00 (1270)	—	50.88 (1292)	—	—	—	—	—	—
12	300	56.00 (1422)	—	56.88 (1445)	—	—	—	—	—	—

**FOOTNOTE**

<sup>1</sup> See Figure B.15 for reference to dimension A, dimension B and dimension C

## Annex D

(informative)

### Guidance for Travel Stops by Valve Type

Table D.1 provides guidance on travel stops by common valve type.

**Table D.1—Valve Travel Stops**

Valve Type	Option/Detail	Travel Stop Requirements	Manual Gearbox	Actuator
Quarter-turn ball	All	Stops for open and close	Stops in gearbox for open and close	Actuator should control position, not valve stops
Rising Stem ball	All	Stops for open position only	Stops in gearbox for open position	Actuator should control position for open.
Check	With external clapper lift	Stop in body required for open  No stop required for close	Gearbox stops in open and closed position to avoid overloading valve shaft in the open position and over-rotating the shaft passed the closed position	Actuator stops should control open position, not valve stop, to avoid overloading valve shaft
Gate— Slab/parallel Through-conduit	Conventional (down to close), no backseat.	Stops for open and close	Stops in valve for open or close <sup>a</sup>	Actuator should control position, not valve stops
	Conventional (down to close), with backseat.	Stops for open and close <sup>b</sup>	Stops for open and close in valve <sup>a,b,c,f</sup>	Actuator torque/thrust adjusted or selected to suit backseat in open
	Reverse acting (up to close), no backseat.	Stops for open and close	Stops for open and close in valve <sup>a</sup>	Actuator should control position, not valve stops
	Reverse acting (up to close), with backseat.	Stops for open and close <sup>b</sup>	Stops for open and close in valve <sup>a,b</sup>	Actuator should control position for open. Actuator torque/thrust adjusted or selected to suit backseat in closed
Gate—Expanding	Conventional, single expanding with backseat	No stops required <sup>c, d</sup>	Stops for open in valve <sup>c</sup>  Gearbox stop not required	Actuator torque/thrust adjusted or selected to suit closing load in closed and backseat in open
	Conventional, single expanding without backseat	No stops required in closed <sup>d</sup>  Stop in valve required in open	Stops for open in valve. Gearbox stop not required	Actuator torque/thrust adjusted or selected to suit closing load in close
	Conventional, double, or expanding without	No stops required <sup>e</sup>	Gearbox stop not required	Actuator torque/thrust adjusted or selected to suit closing load in closed and wedging load in open
Plug—Non-expanding	All	Stops for open and close	Stops for open and close in gearbox	Actuator should control position, not valve stops

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

Plug – Expanding	Conventional, double expanding	No stops required in close. Stop in valve required in open.	Stops for open in gearbox. No stop required in closed.	Stop for open. Actuator torque/ thrust selected to adjust closing load in closed.
FOOTNOTES <sup>a</sup> Open stops may be in yoke or on stem <sup>b</sup> Backseat provides closed stop <sup>c</sup> Backseat provides open stop <sup>d</sup> Wedging action provides close stop <sup>e</sup> Wedging action provides close and open stop <sup>f</sup> Close stops may be in yoke or on stem.				



## Annex E

(informative)

### Isolation Valve Features

#### E.1 Application of this Annex

Table E.1 is intended to give informative guidance on typical valve functions/features and is not intended to either be all-inclusive or restrictive. Individual valve designs exist that have unique sealing characteristics for which the table may not be appropriate or applicable. The user should take guidance from the manufacturer on establishing specific valve features.

Table E.1—Isolation Valve Types

Valve Type	Sealing Arrangement	Block and Bleed	Double Block and Bleed	Double Isolation and Bleed
<b>General Block:</b> <del>Two Valves with Bleed Between</del> Single valve with two or more closure members	Any valves with bidirectional sealing	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Ball:</b> Trunnion Mounted Valve	Upstream sealing, pressure energized, self-relieving (Note 1)	Yes	(Note 4)	No (Note 5)
Trunnion Mounted Valve DIB-1	Upstream and downstream sealing, pressure energized, example, two bidirectional sealing seats (Note 1)	Yes	(Note 4)	(Note 6)
Trunnion Mounted Valve DIB-2	Upstream and downstream sealing, pressure energized, example, one bidirectional and one unidirectional sealing seat (Note 1)	Yes	(Note 4)	Only if bidirectional seat is on downstream side (Note 6)
Floating Valve	Pressure energized	No (Note 2) (Note 4)	No (Note 4)	No (Note 4)
<b>Gate:</b> Slab and/or Through-conduit	Pressure energized—downstream sealing only/fixed seats (Note 1)	No (Note 2)	No	No
Slab and/or Through-conduit DIB-1	Pressure energized—upstream and downstream sealing (Note 1)	Yes	Yes (Note 3)	Yes (Note 3)
Expanding DIB-2	Mechanically energized	Yes	Yes (Note 3)	Yes (Note 3)
<b>Plug:</b> Standard	Pressure energized, downstream sealing	No (Note 2)	No	No
Expanding DIB-1	Mechanically energized	Yes	Yes	Yes

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

#### FOOTNOTES

NOTE 1 The terms “upstream” and “downstream” refer to the pressure source and open end/equipment respectively and do not refer to flow direction

NOTE 2 Not possible to bleed from valve body, but bleed may be in downstream pipework/pipeline

NOTE 3 Depending on detail design of the valve, some valves may have preferred sealing direction and/or a specified sequence of operation

NOTE 4 Depending on detailed design

NOTE 5 Downstream seat may provide a second barrier at pressures below the cavity relieving pressure barrier

NOTE 6 Depending on detailed design and ability to achieve testing per L.14, L.15, L.16 or L.18

## E.2 Description of Sketches

The user is responsible for ensuring the operational requirements are consistent with specific valve features including sealing capability and function.

The table and sketches are typical and intended to give definition of the terms “block and bleed” (Figure E.1 and Figure E.2), “double block and bleed” (Figure E.3 and Figure E.4), and “double isolation and bleed” (Figure E.5 and Figure E.6) in a single valve or double valve arrangement as defined by this specification. Other documents, including applicable federal regulations, may have a different definition of these terms.

## E.3 Block and Bleed (BB)

BB may be achieved by a connection in the pipework/pipeline downstream of the block valve or from a connection on the valve body when the valve is an upstream seating type.

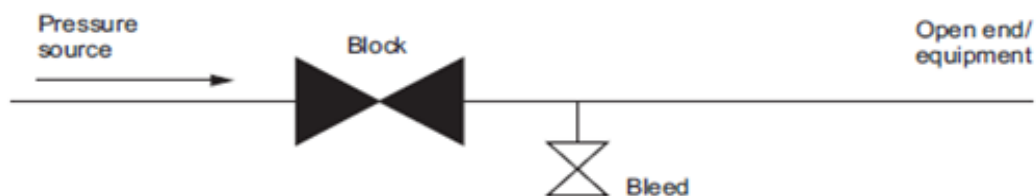


Figure E.1—Block and Bleed—Type A

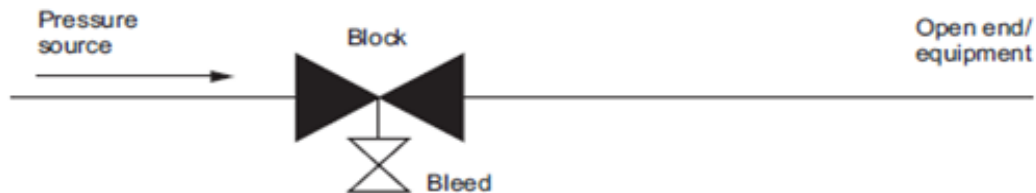
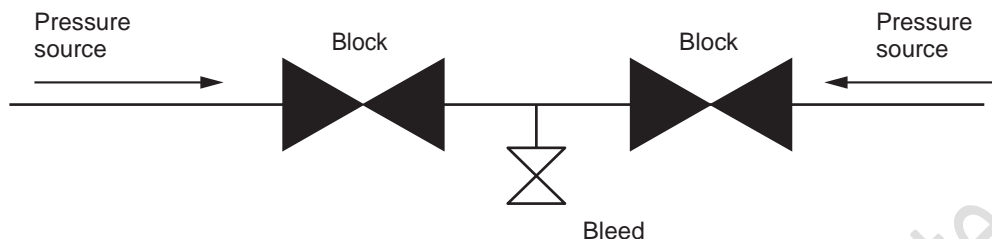


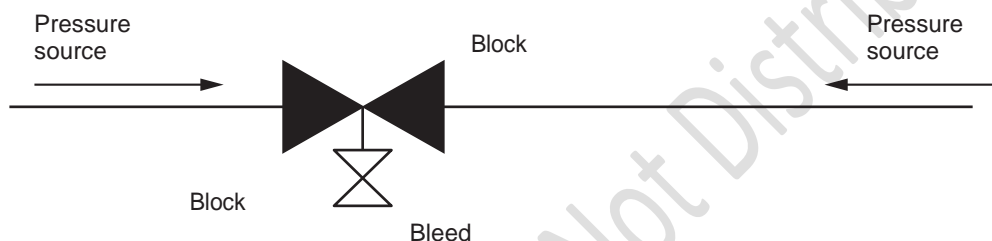
Figure E.2—Block and Bleed—Type B

#### E.3.4 Double Block and Bleed (DBB)

The DBB feature of the valve or valves is the ability to segregate two pressure sources and to bleed/vent pressure in the void between the two sealing elements (blocks). The bleed may be in the pipework/pipeline when two valves are used, or in the valve body between the two seats when the valve has the DBB feature.



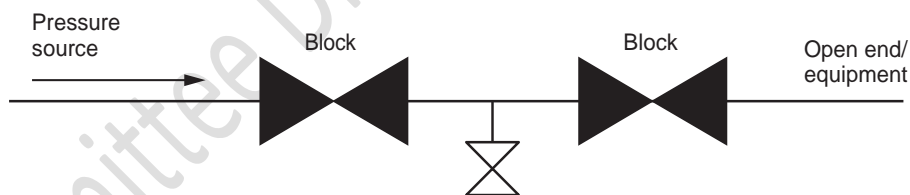
**Figure E.3—Double Block and Bleed—Type A**



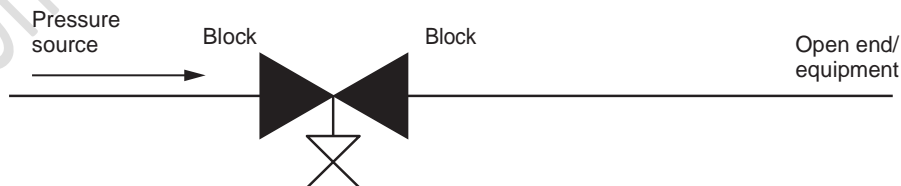
**Figure E.4—Double Block and Bleed—Type B**

#### **E.4.5 Double Isolation and Bleed (DIB)**

The DIB feature of the valve or valves is the ability to provide two sealing elements to a single pressure source, and to bleed/vent between the two sealing elements. Note that some documents dealing with isolation of equipment may refer to this feature as double block and bleed.



**Figure E.5—Double Isolation and Bleed—Type A**



**Figure E.6—Double Isolation and Bleed—Type B**

## Annex F

(informative)

### Design Validation Test

#### F.1 General

This annex provides **one method of** design validation test procedures for equipment identified in this specification, which shall be applied if specified by the manufacturer or purchaser.

When this annex is applied, the design validation procedures in this annex shall be applied to the designs of products, including design changes. It is intended that this annex shall not apply to validation of components and or parts.

NOTE Additional procedure may be used by agreement, provided the test requirements of this annex are met or exceeded.

#### F.2 Effect of Changes in Product

##### ~~F.2.1 Design Changes~~

A change in one of the following parameters shall require a new design validation:

- valve type
- valve configuration
- body style (e.g. two-piece versus three-piece, top entry versus side entry)
- type of sealing element (e.g. O-ring, lipseals, chevrons, BX ring, RTJ)
- **seat design and seat insert material**
- sizing criteria on pressure-containing parts
- sizing criteria of closure member and seats
- design of seal mating parts
- sizing criteria of seat/closure member interfaces
- sizing criteria of the drive train
- maximum speed of operation (e.g. a valve qualified for a 10-second operation would qualify all slower operating times)

**Valve operations during the design validation shall be performed at the qualified speed of operation or faster (e.g. a qualified speed of 10 seconds requires all valve operations to be 10 seconds or less).**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Other changes (such as supplier of sealing element ~~and configuration of seat~~) shall not require new design validation if the manufacturer demonstrates that the performance of the product in the intended pressure, temperature, and service condition shall be maintained.

If a valve with DPE seats, or with self-relieving seats has been previously validated, using a combination of DPE and self-relieving seats shall not need further validation.

### F.3 Products for Design Validation

#### F.3.1 General

Design validation shall be performed on full-size ~~valve prototypes or production unit~~.

Prior to performing any gas testing, the valve shall as a minimum have successfully passed the body hydrostatic testing per F.17.1.

Prototype valves shall be manufactured to the same manufacturing methods and control used to manufacture production valves.

NOTE Valves or components that have undergone validation testing may be used for further testing or in a production unit.

If the qualification valve is to be reassembled and ~~use~~ ~~used~~ as production ~~valve unit~~ after design validation testing is performed, the following minimum activities shall apply:

- all seals replaced, and
- ~~bearings and thrust washers replaced;~~
- ~~seat springs replaced;~~
- dimensional inspection on pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts and pressure-boundary bolting performed to ensure continued conformance with the manufacturer's drawing dimensions and design acceptance criteria, and
- sealing surface finishes on pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts checked to ensure continued conformance with the design acceptance criteria, and
- nonconforming parts reworked or replaced, and
- for reworked components, manufacturer shall demonstrate that the rework does not affect any of the elements or parameters listed in F.2, and
- ~~reapply the same surface NDE already applied on the finished machined parts components during production for critical parts,~~ and
- ~~production testing is performed.~~ FAT/Production testing is performed in accordance with 10.

#### F.3.2 ~~Testing Product Test Valve~~

Design validation shall be performed on full-size ~~valve qualification units~~.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

For products that are provided with multiple sealing sets, each seal set shall be independently verified at the beginning, at the minimum and maximum temperatures, and at the end of the design validation procedure.

Valves shall be tested with end caps or blind flanges fitted.

NOTE A chevron packing is considered as a single sealing set.

#### F.4 External Paint or Coatings

The product used in any pressure test shall be free of paint or other coatings that can impede leak detection and/or leak observation.

The product used in validation testing shall be free of paint or other coatings.

#### F.5 Safety

The manufacturer shall identify and implement the actions needed to ensure the safety of personnel and equipment.

#### F.6 Test Orientation

Validation test shall be performed with stem in vertical orientation with horizontal bore, unless otherwise agreed.

Different installation between prototype and production valve shall not require a new validation test if the suitability of the orientation can be substantiated by other means.

#### F.7 ~~Pressure~~ Testing Medium

The testing medium shall be a fluid that remains in the liquid or gaseous state throughout the testing temperature range.

NOTE ~~Hydrostatic test fluid gas, hydraulic fluid, or other mixtures of fluids may be used as the testing medium. (See 3 10.1.2)~~

NOTE Testing medium used may be water (see 10.1.3), gas, hydraulic fluid, or other mixtures of fluids.

#### F.8 Temperature Testing

##### ~~F.8.1 Location of Temperature Measurement~~

The temperature shall be measured using one of the following methods:

Method 1—In contact with the external surface on two locations as a minimum:

- in the seat area, and
- on the bonnet adjacent to the stem seal.

Method 2—In contact with the equipment being tested and within 0.5 in. (13 mm) of the surface wetted by the retained fluid.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Method 3—For maximum-temperature measurement only, the temperature of the fluid used for heating can be employed if the part is not artificially cooled.

~~All temperature readings shall be above the maximum and below minimum testing temperatures, respectively.~~

### ~~F.8.2 Application of Cooling for Minimum Temperature Testing~~

The cooling for minimum temperature testing shall be applied on the external surface of the equipment and/or through the valve bore, per manufacturer's design criteria.

## **F.9 Test Duration Hold Periods**

### ~~F.9.1 Start of Test Duration Hold Periods~~

~~Test duration Hold periods~~ shall start after pressure and temperature stabilization has occurred and the equipment with a pressure-monitoring device has been isolated from the pressure source. The specified ~~test duration hold times~~ shall be a minimum.

### ~~F.9.2 Pressure Stabilization~~

The stabilization criteria shall be documented in the manufacturer's pressure testing procedure

### ~~F.9.3 Pressure Maintenance~~

~~Pressure shall remain within 5% of the test pressure or within 8 psi/min (57.5 KPa/min) whichever is less, during the test hold period.~~

Pressure shall not vary by more than 10% during test duration.

Pressure shall not fall below the test pressure before the end of the test ~~duration hold period~~.

### ~~F.9.4 Temperature Stabilization~~

Temperature shall be recognized as stabilized when the rate of change is less than 1 °F/min (0.5 °C/min).

The temperature shall remain at or beyond the extreme during the hold period but should not go beyond the upper and lower temperatures by more than 20 °F (11 °C).

## **F.10 Scaling**

### ~~F.10.1 General~~

Design validation of a valve shall be independent of the type of actuation used during the validation test.

NOTE Scaling may be used to validate members of a product family in conformance with the requirement of this paragraph.

### ~~F.10.2 Product Family~~

A product family shall meet the following design criteria:



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

- configuration is the same.
- all parameters listed in F.2.1 are the same
- operation, principles of functional operation are the same (e.g. non-return, linear quarter-turn, etc.).
- code or standard, design requirements are the same resulting in a comparable safety factor in relation to material properties.

NOTE If finite element analysis (FEA) is available, the design stress levels in relation to material mechanical properties may be based on these same criteria.

## F.11 Limitations of Scaling

### F.11.1 General Design Validation

Validation testing of any end connector shall qualify all end connector types.

Bolted Bonnet valve qualifies Welded Bonnet.

### F.11.2 Design Validation by Pressure Rating

The test product shall be used to validate products of the same family having equal or lower pressure ratings.

Product family validation range is as follows:

- ASME Class 300 validates down to Class 150
- ASME Class 600 validates down to Class 150
- ASME Class 1500 validates down to Class 900
- ASME Class 2500
- Intermediate rated valves shall be validated by itself or the next higher Class rated valve.

### F.11.3 Design Validation by Size

Testing of one size of a product family shall validate products as per Table F.1.

For circular opening valves, Table F.1 the below shall be applied at the closure member.

For noncircular opening valves Table F.1 the below shall be applied at the end connector.

For valve size smaller than NPS8 (DN 200) at the closure member testing of two sizes validates all nominal sizes between the two sizes tested.

The tested valve shall qualify the following:

Size valves ranging from DN 15 (NPS ½) up to and including DN 50 (NPS 2), any valve in that range shall qualify the full range, e.g. a successful testing of a DN 25 (NPS 1) valve size qualifies DN 15 (NPS ½) through to DN 50 (NPS 2).

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

Sizes from NPS 3 (DN80) up to NPS 24 (DN600) shall qualify nominal valve sizes 3 sizes smaller and 2 sizes larger.

Sizes above NPS 24 (DN600) it will qualify nominal valve sizes 1 size smaller and 2 sizes larger.

### F.11.3 Design Validation by Temperature

The temperature range validated by the test product shall validate all temperatures that fall entirely within that range.

**Table F.1—Sealing by Size**

Tested Size		Validated Sizes, in. (mm)
NPS	DN	
½	15	½ (15) to 2 (50)
¾	20	½ (15) to 2 (50)
1	25	½ (15) to 2 (50)
1¼	32	1 (25) to 2 (50)
1½	40	1 (25) to 2 (50)
2	50	1 (25) to 3 (80)
2½	65	1 (25) to 3 (80)
3	80	2 (50) to 4 (100)
4	100	3 (80) to 6 (150)
6	150	4 (100) to 8 (200)
8	200	6 (150) to 12 (300)
10	250	8 (200) to 16 (400)
12	300	8 (200) to 16 (400)
14	350	10 (250) to 18 (450)
16	400	12 (300) to 20 (500)
18	450	14 (350) to 24 (600)
20	500	16 (400) to 24 (600)
22	550	18 (450) to 26 (650)
24	600	20 (500) to 30 (750)
26	650	20 (500) to 30 (750)
28	700	24 (600) to 34 (850)
30	750	24 (600) to 36 (900)
32	800	24 (600) to 36 (900)
34	850	30 (750) to 38 (950)
36	900	30 (750) to 42 (1050)

### F.11.4

## F.12 Documentation

### F.12.1 Design Validation Files

The manufacturer shall maintain a file on each design validation.

### **F.12.2 Contents of Design Validation Files**

Design validation files shall contain or reference the following information, when applicable:

- a) test number and revision level, or test procedure
- b) complete identification of the product being tested
- c) date of test completion
- d) test results and post-test examination conclusions (see F.16)
- e) model numbers and other pertinent identifying data on all other sizes, rated pressures temperature ranges, and standard test fluid ratings of products of the same product family that are validated by the validation of this specific product
- f) all detailed dimensional drawings and material specifications applicable to the tested product, including seals and non-extrusion devices
- g) sketch of test rig, product, and seal or sample; temperature and pressure measurement locations should be shown
- h) actual sealing-surface dimensions
- i) all test data specified in this annex, including actual test conditions (pressure, temperature, etc.) and observed leakages or other acceptance parameters; identification of testing media used
- j) test equipment identification and calibration status
- k) certification of manufacturer report, including the supplier of test seals

### **F.13 Test Equipment Calibration Requirements**

Measuring and test equipment shall be identified, controlled, calibrated, and adjusted as per 9.1.

### **F.14 Design Validation Procedure**

Procedure to validate a valve design shall be as identified in Table F.2.

~~For valve with two unidirectional seats, one seat only shall be tested. For valves with two unidirectional seats each seat shall be tested in accordance with 10.4.3.1.~~

~~For valve with two bidirectional seats, the upstream seat shall be tested per L.15 with half the cycles in F.19 and F.20 then the downstream seat shall be tested per L.15 with half the cycles in F.19 and F.20.~~

~~For valves with one seat unidirectional and one seat bidirectional, the unidirectional seat shall be tested per 10.4.3.1 with half the cycles in F.19 and F.20 and the bidirectional seat shall be tested per L.16 with half the cycles in F.19 and F.20.~~

~~For valve with two bidirectional seats, one seat only shall be tested, half of the cycle in F.19 and F.20 shall be performed with pressure coming from the line and half with pressure coming from the valve cavity.~~

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

For valves with one seat unidirectional and one seat bidirectional, bidirectional seat shall be tested half of the cycles in F.19 and F.20 shall be performed with pressure coming from the line and half with pressure coming from the valve cavity. Additional cycles may be performed on unidirectional seat.

## F.15 Structural Integrity

Product that deforms to an extent that any other performance requirement cannot be achieved shall be considered not acceptable and the product shall be rejected (see F.16).

## F.16 Post-test Examination

The tested prototype shall be disassembled and inspected, and all critical parts shall be photographed.

The examination shall be performed to ensure that neither the product nor the component design contains defects to the extent that any performance requirement cannot be met. The results of the examination shall be documented.

**Table F.2—Design Validation for Valves**

Design Validation Tests	Reference Section
Hydrostatic Body Pressure Test	F.17.1
Seat Static Pressure Test	F.17.2
Force or Torque Measurement	F.18
Dynamic (Open/close Cycling) Pressure Test at Ambient Temperature	160 cycles per F.19
Seat Static Pressure Test - Gas	F.17.2
Dynamic (Open/Close Cycling) Pressure Gas Test at Maximum Temperature	20 cycles per F.20
Gas Body Test at Maximum Rated Temperature	F.21
Gas Seat Test at Maximum Rated Temperature	F.22
Low-Pressure Seat Test at Maximum Rated Temperature	F.23
Dynamic (Open/Close Cycling) Pressure Gas Test at Minimum Temperature	20 cycles per F.20
Gas Body Test at Minimum Rated Temperature	F.21
Gas Seat Test at Minimum Rated Temperature	F.22
Low-Pressure Seat Test at Minimum Rated Temperature	F.23
Body Shell Pressure and Temperature Cycling	F.24

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

Gas Body Test at Ambient Temperature	F.25
High Pressure Gas Seat Test at Ambient Temperature	F.26
Low Pressure Gas Seat Test at Ambient Temperature	F.27
Final Force or Torque Measurement	F.28

## **F.17 Static Pressure Testing at Ambient Temperature**

### **~~F.17.1 Hydrostatic Body Pressure Test~~**

Hydrostatic body testing shall conform to 10.3.

Test duration shall be a minimum of 1 hour.

### **~~F.17.2 Seat Static Pressure Test~~**

Hydrostatic seat test shall conform to 10.4.

When seat is provided with self-relieving function test according to I.9 shall be performed.

High pressure gas seat test shall conform to I.7.3.

Test duration shall be a minimum of 1 hour.

## **F.18 Force or Torque Measurement**

The breakaway and running torques or forces shall be measured at the maximum **design pressure MAWP** difference.

This shall be applicable to all valves, including check valves provided with an external operator if no differential pressure is applied across the closure member.

NOTE The force/torque may be determined by direct or indirect measurement (i.e. pressure applied to an area).

The manufacturer shall prepare a procedure to measure breakaway and running torques or forces.

The operating forces or torques shall be within the manufacturer's specifications.

## **F.19 Dynamic (Open/close Cycling) Pressure Test at Ambient Temperature**

### **~~F.19.1 Speed of Operation~~**

The speed of operation shall be recorded.

### **~~F.19.2 Procedure for Valves except Check Valves~~**

The valves shall be tested as follows:

- Fill the downstream end of the valve with the test medium at 1 % or less of test pressure.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

- b) Apply pressure equal to the ambient working pressure against the upstream side of the valve. All subsequent seat tests shall be as specified in F.14.
- c) Open the valve fully, starting against the full differential pressure. Pressure shall be maintained at the percentage of the initial test pressure after the BTO as per Table F.4.

NOTE The opening stroke may be interrupted to adjust the pressure within the above limits of Table F.4.

**Table F.4—Minimum Percentage of Pressure During Opening Phase**

Valve Type	Minimum Percentage of Initial Pressure
Rising Stem Valves	50 %
All other Valve types	30 %

- d) Close the valve fully while pressure is maintained within the limits of the preceding step.
- e) Bleed the downstream pressure to 1 % or less of test pressure after the valve is fully closed.
- f) Repeat until a minimum of 160 pressure cycles has been carried out.

#### **F.19.3 Procedure for Check Valves**

The manufacturer shall maintain a documented procedure for check valve testing.

Check valves shall be tested as follows:

- a) Apply pressure equal to the ambient working pressure to the downstream side of the valve.
- b) Relieve the pressure on the downstream side and apply 1% or less of test pressure on the upstream side and unseat the valve.
- c) Repeat until a minimum of 160 pressure cycles has been carried out.

For check valves provided with external operator, 160 opening closing cycles shall be performed on the external operator without differential pressure across the closure member.

#### **F.20 Dynamic (Open/Close Cycling) Pressure Gas Test at Maximum/Minimum Rated Temperature**

At the maximum/minimum **design allowable** temperature, the procedure of F.19 shall be followed with the exception that the number of cycles shall be 20 and the test medium shall be gas.

#### **F.21 Gas Body Test at Maximum/Minimum Rated Temperature**

The gas body test shall be performed as follows:

- a) The valves shall be in the partially open position during testing. Check valves shall be tested from the upstream side.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

- b) The test pressure shall be the maximum rating pressure at test temperature.
- c) The **test duration hold period** shall be 1 hour.

Gas body test at maximum/minimum temperature shall be acceptable, if the pressure change observed on the pressure-measuring device is less than 5 % of the test pressure or 500 psi (3.45 MPa), whichever is less.

## **F.22 Gas Seat Test at Maximum/Minimum Rated Temperature**

The maximum rating pressure at test temperature shall be applied on the upstream side of the valves and released on the downstream side. Check valves shall be tested from the downstream side.

The **test duration hold period** shall be a minimum of 1 hour.

The pressure shall be released after the **test duration hold period**.

Gas seat test at maximum/minimum temperature shall be acceptable if the leakage rate is less than the acceptance criteria specified in F.26.

## **F.23 Low-pressure Seat Test at Maximum/Minimum Rated Temperature**

The valves shall be subjected to a differential pressure between 5% and no more than 10% of the rated working pressure, with a minimum of 80 psi (5.5 bar). The pressure shall be applied on the upstream side of the valves and released on the downstream side. For check valves, the low-pressure seat test pressure shall be applied on the downstream end of the valve with the opposite end vented to the atmosphere.

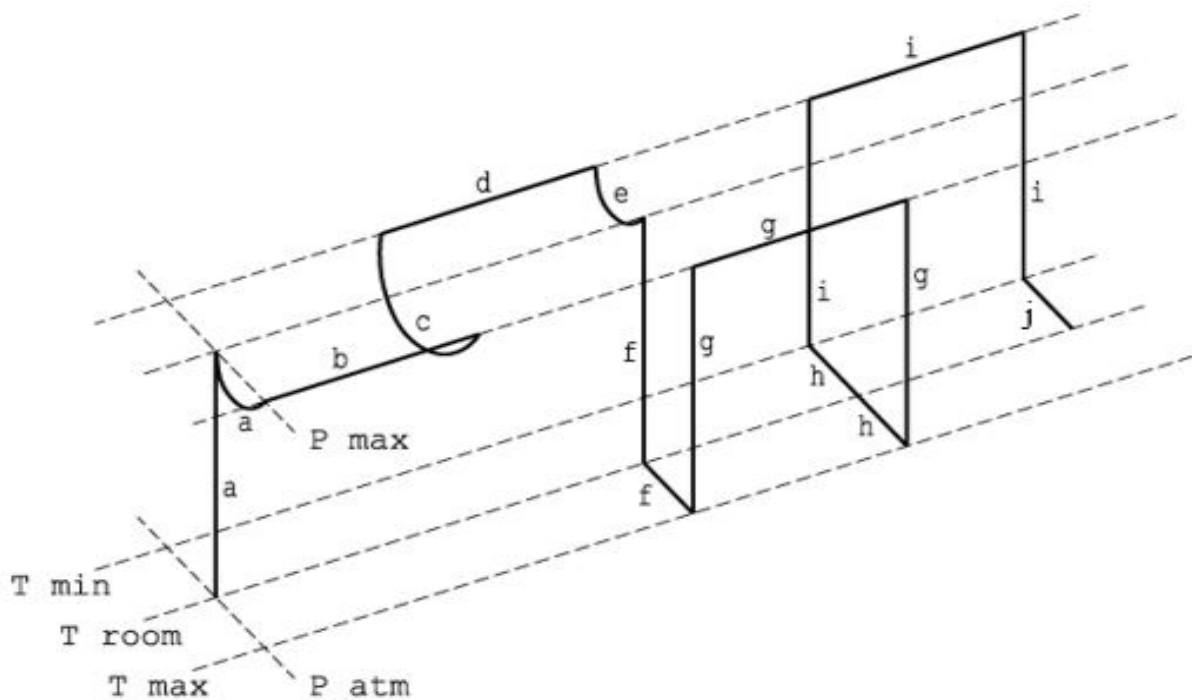
The **test duration hold period** shall be a minimum of 1 hour.

Gas seat test at maximum/minimum temperature shall be acceptable if the leakage rate is less than the acceptance criteria specified in F.27.

## **F.24 Body Shell Pressure and Temperature Cycling**

### **~~F.24.1 General~~**

Pressure/temperature cycles of the body shell shall be performed as specified in Figure F.1.



**Figure F.1—Test Procedure for Pressure Temperature Cycle**

#### **F.24.2 Test Pressure and Temperature**

The test pressure and temperature extremes shall be as specified in a validation procedure.

#### **F.24.3 Test Procedure**

Pressure shall be monitored and controlled during temperature change. The following procedure shall be performed.

**NOTE** The item letters of the steps of the procedure correspond to the letters shown in Figure F.1.

Apply the test pressure to the body shell at ambient temperature and maintain at 50% to 100% of test pressure while raising temperature to the maximum.

- a) Hold for a period of 1 hour minimum at test pressure.
- b) Reduce the temperature to the minimum while maintaining 50% to 100% of test pressure.
- c) Hold for a minimum period of 1 hour at test pressure.
- d) Raise the temperature to ambient temperature while maintaining 50% to 100% of test pressure.
- e) Release the pressure, and then raise the temperature to the maximum.



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

- f) Apply the test pressure to the body shell, hold for a minimum period of 1 hour, and then release the pressure.
- g) Reduce the temperature to the minimum.
- h) Apply the test pressure to the body shell, hold for a minimum period of 1 hour, and then release the pressure.
- i) Raise the temperature to ambient temperature.

## F.25 Gas Body Test at Ambient Temperature

### F.25.1 General

Gas shell testing at ambient temperature shall be conducted using the methodology indicated into 1.7.2 1.7.4.

### F.25.2 Leak Detection

Gas testing at ambient temperature shall be conducted with a method for leak detection.

NOTE 1 The product may be completely submerged in a liquid, or the product may be flooded in the seal areas being validated, such that all possible leak paths are covered.

NOTE 2 The product may be assembled with one end of a tube connected to a blind connector enclosing all possible leak paths being validated.

When one end of the tube is connected to a blind connector, the other end of the tube shall be immersed in a liquid or attached to a leakage measurement device.

NOTE 3 Other methods that can detect leakage accurately are acceptable.

### F.25.2 Acceptance Criteria

Acceptance criteria shall be per 1.7.2.2.

The gas test at a temperature between 40 °F and 120 °F (4 °C and 50 °C) shall be acceptable if no sustained bubbles are observed. If leakage is observed, the rate shall be less than the rates shown in Table F.5, measured at atmospheric pressure, during specified pressure test duration hold periods.

Table F.5—Ambient Temperature Gas Leakage Acceptance Criteria for All Valve Types

Seal Type	Allowable Leakage
Stem Seal	5.5 cm <sup>3</sup> /h/NPS
Static (Bonnet Seal, End Connectors)	1.5 cm <sup>3</sup> /h/NPS

## F.26 High Pressure Gas Seat Test at Ambient Temperature

Valves shall undergo a seat test that conforms to 1.7.3 1.7.2.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Leakage for soft-seated valves shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate B

Leakage for lubricated plug valves shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate A

For metal-seated valves, the leakage rate shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate D.

For metal-seated check valves, the leakage rate shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate F.

Actual leakage shall be recorded for all seat tests.

### **F.27 Low Pressure Gas Seat Test at Ambient Temperature**

Valves shall undergo a seat test that conforms to I.6

Leakage for soft-seated valves shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate B.

Leakage for lubricated plug valves shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate A.

For metal-seated valves, the leakage rate shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate D

For metal-seated check valves, the leakage rate shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate F.

Actual leakage shall be recorded for all seat tests.

### **F.28 Final Force or Torque Measurement**

The breakaway and running torques or forces shall be measured. For check valves provided with an external operator, torques or forces shall be measured without differential pressure on the closure member.

The procedure for final force or torque measurement shall be determined and documented by the manufacturer.

The operating forces or torques shall be within the manufacturer's specifications.

## Annex G

(normative)

### External Coating for End Connectors

#### G.1 General

This annex provides specific requirements for areas that are not to be coated on flange, weld end and pipe pup connectors, and shall be performed after all testing is completed.

#### G.2 Uncoated areas

Valves with raised-face end connectors shall have the area identified uncoated (see Figure G.1).

Valves with raised-face end connectors shall ensure that the area identified in Figure G.1 remains uncoated.

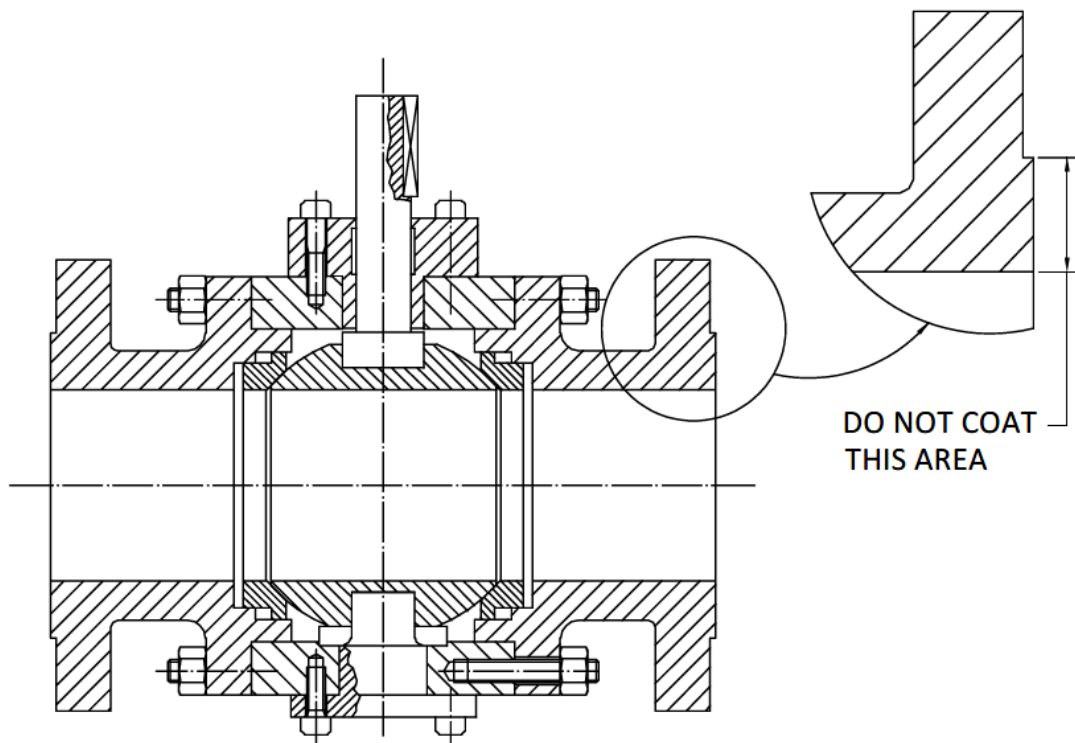
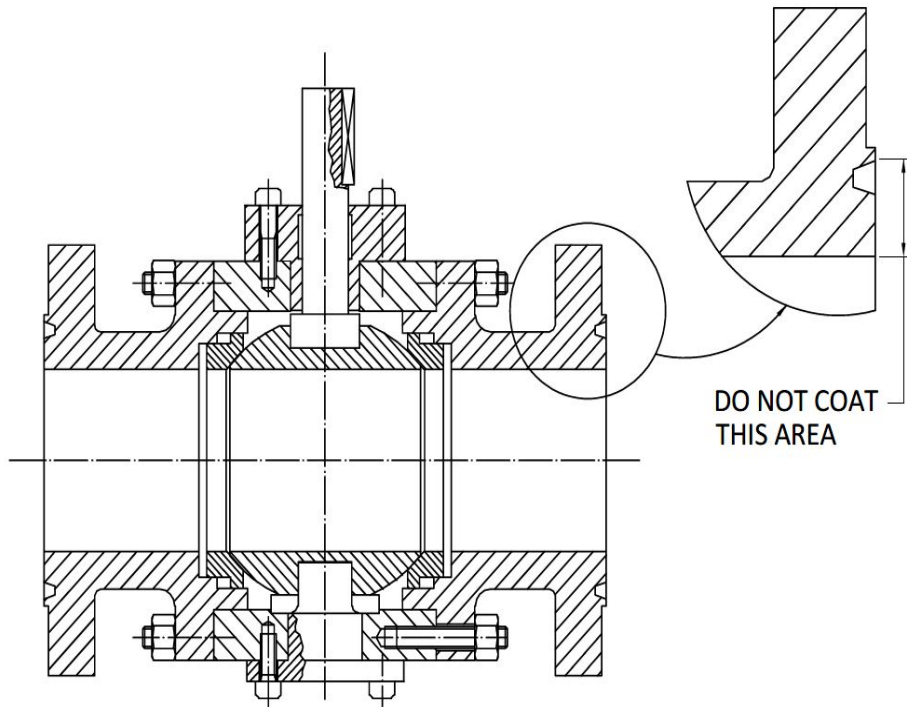


Figure G.1—Raised Face

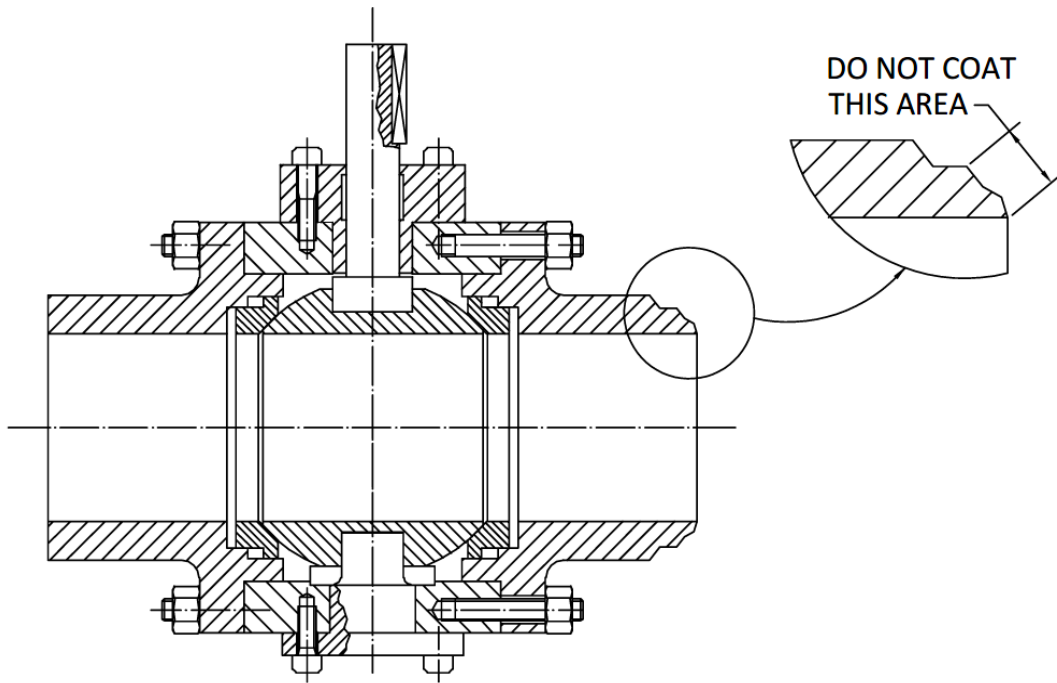
Valves with ring type joint or raised-face ring type joint end connectors shall have the area identified uncoated

(see Figure G.2).

Valves with weld end connectors shall have the area identified uncoated (see Figure G.3).



**Figure G.2—Ring Type Joint or Raised Face Ring Type Joint**



**Figure G.3—Weld End**

Valves with pup pipe welded to end connectors shall have the area identified uncoated (see Figure G.4).

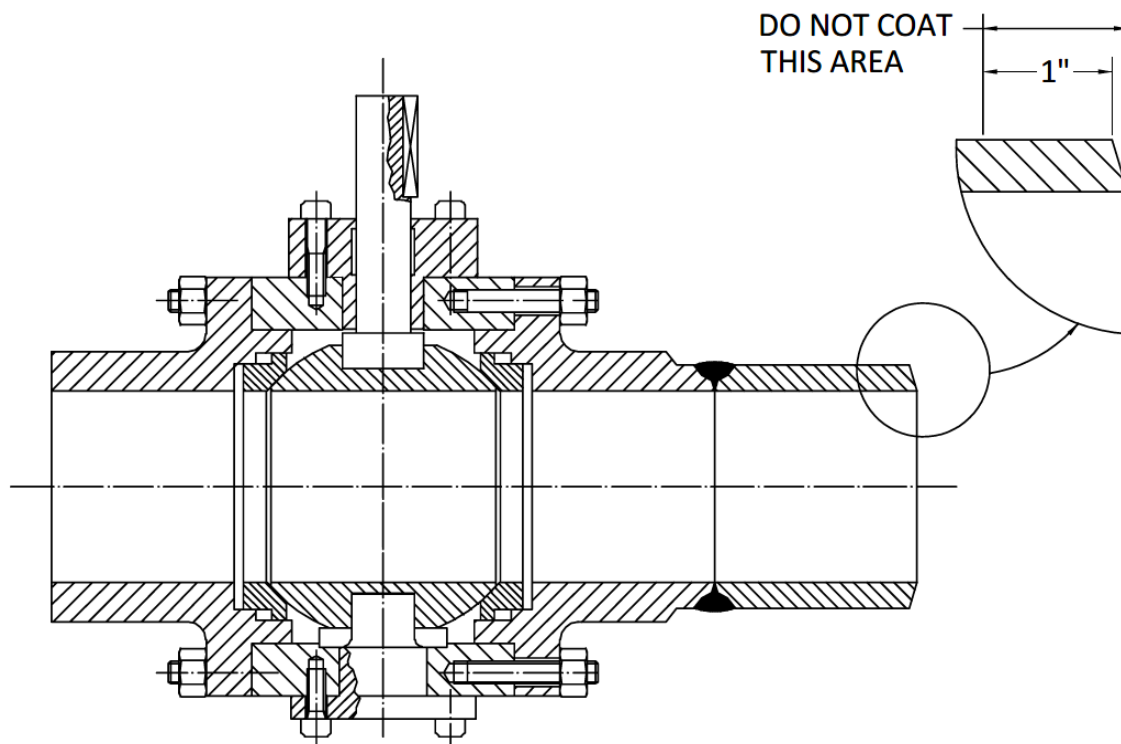


Figure G.4—Pipe Pup Weld Ends

## Annex H

(normative)

### Heat-Treat Equipment Qualification

#### H.1 Temperature Survey Method for Batch-type Furnaces

The furnace working zone shall be defined by the manufacturer. A temperature survey within the furnace working zone(s) shall be performed on each furnace at the maximum and minimum temperatures for which each furnace is being used.

For furnaces having a working zone less than or equal to 10 ft<sup>3</sup> (0.3 m<sup>3</sup>), a minimum of three temperature sensors located either at the front, center and rear, or at the top, center and bottom of the furnace working zone shall be used.

For furnaces having a working zone greater than 10 ft<sup>3</sup> (0.3 m<sup>3</sup>) and not greater than 1125 ft<sup>3</sup> (31.5 m<sup>3</sup>), a minimum of nine temperature sensors shall be used. For each additional 125 ft<sup>3</sup> (3.5 m<sup>3</sup>) beyond 1125 ft<sup>3</sup> (31.5 m<sup>3</sup>) of furnace working zone surveyed, at least one additional temperature sensors shall be used, up to 40 temperature sensors. The first nine thermocouples shall be located as per Figure H.1 and Figure H.2. Each additional temperature sensors location shall be equally spaced in the central additional working zone volume.

NOTE Alternative recognized industry standards such as SAE AMS-2750 AMS2750F or SAE AMS-H-6875, may be used if the furnace thermal uniformity survey (TUS) and furnace instrument calibration requirements in 6.7 are satisfied.

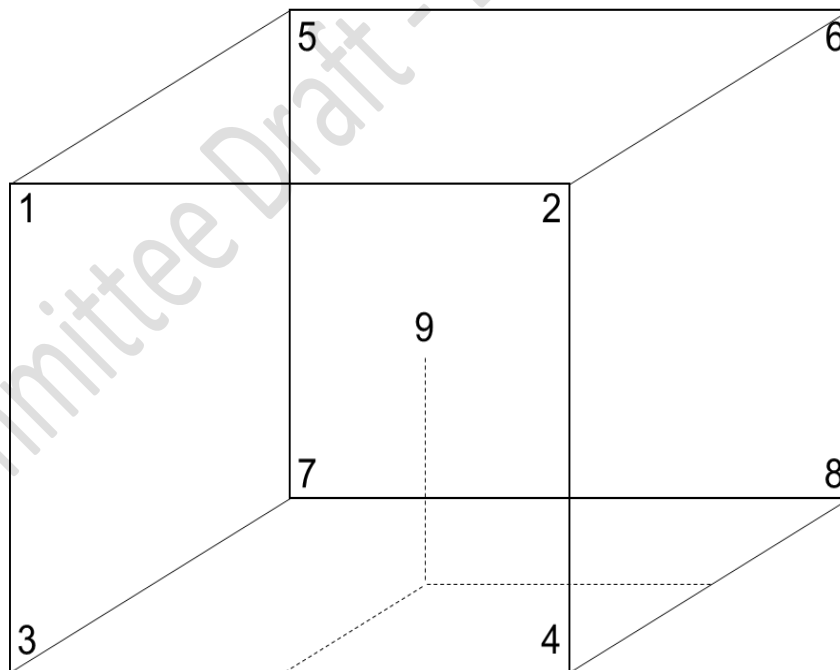
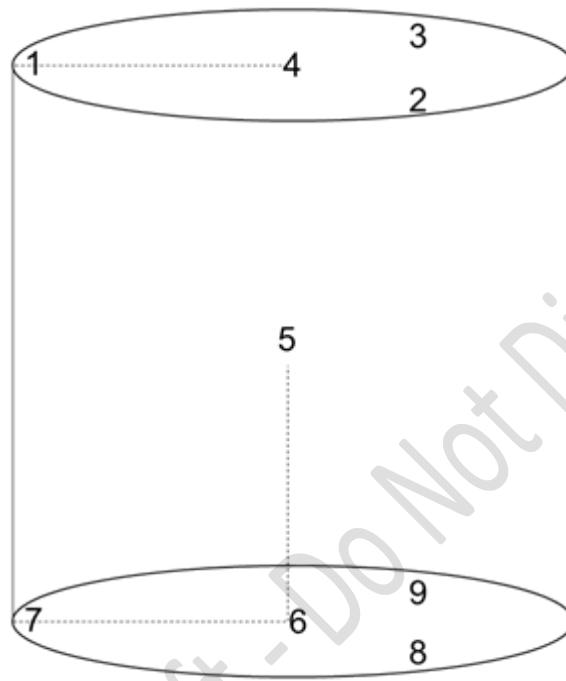


Figure H.1—Thermocouple Locations—Rectangular Furnace (Working Zone)



**Figure H.2—Thermocouple Locations—Cylindrical Furnace (Working Zone)**

After insertion of the temperature-sensing devices, readings shall be taken at least once every three minutes to determine when the temperature of the furnace working zone approaches the bottom of the temperature range being surveyed.

Once the furnace temperature has reached the set-point temperature, the temperature of all test locations shall be recorded at two-minute intervals, maximum, for at least 10 minutes. Then, readings shall be taken at five-minute intervals, maximum, for enough time (at least 30 minutes) to determine the recurrent temperature pattern of the furnace working zone.

## **H.2 Temperature Survey Method for Continuous-type Furnaces**

Furnaces used for continuous heat treatment shall be validated in conformance with procedures specified in SAE ~~AMS-2750~~ **AMS2750F** or SAE AMS-H-6875.



## Annex I

(normative)

### Quality Specification Level (QSL) and Supplemental Testing

#### I.1 General

This Annex covers requirements for QSL in section I.1 through I.4 and Supplemental Testing in section I.5 through I.10, when QSL 2, 3 or 4 is specified by the purchaser.

~~This Annex covers requirements for and Supplemental Testing in section I.5 through I.10 when specified by the purchaser.~~

This annex specifies the requirements for NDE, documentation and pressure testing and other supplemental requirements that shall be performed by the manufacturer when specified by the customer.

The QSL requirements of this annex shall apply in lieu of the equivalent **NDE**, pressure testing and documentation requirements from the main body of this specification.

**When NDE is performed as part of Section 7 and 9, it is not required to be repeated per this Annex.**

NOTE The QSLs increase in stringency of requirements with the QSL numbers 2, 3, 3G, 4 and 4G.

Since some QSL requirements affect material processing, the QSL shall apply only when specified at the time of order placement. When any of the QSLs are specified, all requirements of a specific QSL shall apply.

#### I.2 NDE requirements for Quality Specification Levels

The requirements of Table I.1 shall apply for NDE requirements for metallic parts for QSL2, QSL3/3G and QSL4/4G.

NOTE 1 The requirements of Table I.1 vary by the type of raw material for the item being inspected.

The requirements of Table I.2 shall apply to the extent, method, and acceptance criteria for the various inspection codes used in Table I.1.

~~NDE personnel shall be qualified in conformance with the manufacturer's documented training program that is based on the requirements specified in ASNT SNT-TC-1A or ACCP-CP-1 or ISO 9712.~~

~~A qualified Level III examiner that conforms to the requirements of ASNT SNT-TC-1A or ACCP-CP-1 or ISO 9712 shall approve all NDE procedures.~~

**NDE personnel shall be qualified in conformance with the manufacturer's documented training program that is based on the requirements specified in ASNT SNT-TC-1A or ISO 9712.**

**NOTE 2 Certification under ASNT ACCP-CP-1A can satisfy this requirement.**

**A qualified Level III examiner that conforms to the requirements of ASNT SNT-TC-1A or ISO 9712 shall approve all NDE procedures.**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

~~Minimum NDE Level 2 personnel shall perform all NDE inspection activities for interpretation of acceptance criteria.~~

NDE personnel qualified to a Level II or Level III shall perform all NDE inspections to ensure conformance to applicable acceptance criteria.

NOTE 2 — ~~For use of outsourced qualification of Nondestructive Examination (NDE) Services, see API 20D.~~

NOTE 3 For guidance on qualification of Nondestructive Examination (NDE) service providers, see API 20D.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table I.1—NDE Requirements (see Note 1)**

Part	QSL2		QSL3/3G		QSL4/4G	
	Cast	Wrought <sup>g</sup>	Cast	Wrought <sup>g</sup>	Cast	Wrought <sup>g</sup>
Body or <b>closures and</b> end connectors or bonnet or cover or gland housing	VT1	VT2	VT1	VT2	VT1	VT2
	MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1	MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1	MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1
	-	-	RT1 <sup>a</sup>	UT2	<b>RT3 or UT4</b> <b>RT1 and</b> <b>UT1<sup>af</sup></b>	UT2
Welding ends <sup>b</sup>	MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1	MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1	MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1
	RT3 or UT4	UT2	RT3 or UT4	UT2	RT3 or UT4	UT2
Stem or shaft <sup>c</sup>	-	VT5	-	MT1 or PT1	-	MT1 or PT1
	-	-	-	-	-	UT2
Trunnion <sup>d</sup> or Trunnion/bearing plates	VT1 and VT5	VT2 and VT5	VT1	VT2	VT1	-
			MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1	MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1
					UT1	UT2
Pressure boundary bolting				Table I.3		Table I.3
Closure member <sup>c</sup> Seat rings <sup>c</sup>	VT1 and VT5	VT2 and VT5	VT1	VT2	VT1	-
			MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1	MT2 or PT2	MT1 or PT1
Corrosion-resistant overlay in final supplied condition	VT3	VT3	VT3	VT3	VT3	VT3
	PT1	PT1	PT1	PT1	PT1	PT1
					UT3	UT3
<b>Fillet and attachment</b> Welds <sup>e</sup> to pressure-containing parts	<b>VT3</b>	<b>VT3</b>	<b>VT3</b>	<b>VT3</b>	<b>VT3</b>	<b>VT3</b>
			MT1 or PT1	MT1 or PT1	MT1 or PT1	MT1 or PT1
Hard facing	VT4	VT4	PT1	PT1	PT1	PT1
Sealing surfaces			MT3 or PT3	MT3 or PT3	MT3 or PT3	MT3 or PT3
Seals gaskets & Seat springs	VT4					
Pressure-containing welds <b>Pipe pup to valve welds or</b> <b>pipe pups<sup>e</sup></b>	VT3 and MT1 or PT1 and RT2 or UT3					
<b>Reinforcement &amp; stiffening welds</b>	<b>VT3</b>					
Plating	VT4					

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

#### FOOTNOTES

NOTE 4 See Table I.2 for specification of the examinations referred to in this table.

- a RT1 may be replaced by UT4 by agreement.
- b A band around each weld end extending back from the body end a distance equal to the greater of 3tm or 2.75 in. (70 mm) See ASME B16.34 for verification of wall thickness 'tm'.
- c MT or PT to be performed prior to coating, plating, or overlay.
- d Trunnion designs may be pressure-containing or pressure-controlling. If the trunnion is a pressure-containing part, then the requirements for body apply.
- e These include fillet, attachment, reinforcing, stiffening welds etc.
- ~~e NDE requirements of pipe pups shall be established by agreement.~~
- f RT1 plus UT1 may be replaced by RT3.
- g Wrought material applies to Bar, Forgings and Plate

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

**Table I.2—Extent, Method, and Acceptance Criteria of NDE/Item Examination Code (see Note 1)**

Exam	Extent	Method	Acceptance
RT1	Critical areas per ASME B16.34 or as defined by manufacture	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 2	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 7
RT2	100 % where practicable	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 2	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, UW-51 for linear indications and ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 4 for rounded indications
RT3	100 %	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 2	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 7
UT1	Remaining areas not covered by RT1	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 5	ASTM A609/A609M, Table 2, Quality Level 2
UT2	All surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 5	Forgings: ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Div. 1, UF-55 for angle beam and ASME B16.34 for straight beam  Plate: ASTM A578/A578M
UT3	Weldments: All surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 4	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 12
	Overlay: All accessible machined surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 4 straight beam method	ASTM A578A/A578M standard Level C
UT4	100 %	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 5	ASTM A609/A609M, Table 2, Quality Level 1
MT1	All accessible surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 7	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 6
MT2	All accessible surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 7	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 7
MT3	All sealing surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 7	No relevant rounded or relevant linear indications in pressure-contact sealing surfaces shall be permitted <sup>a</sup>
PT1	All accessible surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 6	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 8
PT2	All accessible surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 6	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 7
PT3	All sealing surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 7	No relevant rounded or relevant linear indications in pressure-contact sealing surfaces shall be permitted <sup>a</sup>
VT1	100 % accessible as cast surfaces	9.4.1	9.4.1
VT2	100 % accessible as forged surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Div. 1, UF-45, and UF-46 9.4.2	Visible defects such as seams, laps, or folds are not allowed. 9.4.2
VT3	100 % accessible as welded surfaces	ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 9  7.5.3.2 or 7.8 or 7.9	Undercut shall not reduce the thickness in the area (considering both sides) to below the minimum thickness.  Surface porosity and exposed slag are not permitted on or within 45 mm of seating surfaces  7.5.3.2 or 7.8 or 7.9
VT4	100 % accessible surfaces	Per applicable industry material specification	Per applicable industry material specification
VT5	100 % accessible machined surfaces	Visual testing takes into account the requirements of 9.2 9.4.3	Per applicable manufacturer's requirements 9.4.3
<b>FOOTNOTE</b> <b>NOTE</b> See Table I.1 for application of the examinations referred to in this table.			
<sup>a</sup> A relevant indication is defined as a surface NDE indication with major dimensions greater than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.). An indication not associated with a surface rupture is not considered to be a relevant indication.			

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

### I.3 Production Material Requirements

The production requirements for casting, open-die forgings, close dies forgings, alloy and carbon steel bolting and corrosion resistant bolting requirements for QSL-3 and QSL-4 shall conform to Table I.3.

NOTE Use of materials or services that conform to API 20A, API 20B, API 20C, API 20E or API 20F does not require the material or service be provided from a facility that is specifically licensed to API 20A, API 20B, API 20C, API 20E or API 20F, respectively.

**Table I.3 —Production Materials Requirements**

Level	Applicable Reference	Applicable BSL-CSL-FSL
QSL 2	PMR	PMR
QSL3/3G	API 20A, Section 5	CSL 2
	API 20B, Section 5	FSL 2
	API 20C, Section 5	FSL 2
	API 20E, Section 5 <sup>a</sup>	BSL 2
	API 20F, Section 5 <sup>a</sup>	BSL 2
QSL4/4G	API 20A, Section 5	CSL 3
	API 20B, Section 5	FSL 3
	API 20C, Section 5	FSL3
	API 20E, Section 5 <sup>a</sup>	BSL 3
	API 20F, Section 5 <sup>a</sup>	BSL 3
PMR = Per Manufacturer Requirements		
<sup>a</sup> When non listed materials are used, requirements per BSL level in Section 5 of API 20E or Section 5 of API 20F apply for mechanical, metallurgical and nondestructive testing.		

### I.4 Hydrostatic/Gas Testing Requirements Sequence

Hydrostatic/gas testing for QSL2, QSL3, QSL3G, QSL4, and QSL4G shall conform to Table I.4.

**Table I.4—Pressure Testing Sequences for Quality Specification Levels**

Test Activity	QSL2	QSL3 <sup>a, b</sup>	QSL3G <sup>a, b</sup>	QSL4 <sup>a, b, c</sup>	QSL4G <sup>a, b, c</sup>
Hydrostatic Backseat (if provided) test per 10.2	One Test	One Test	One Test	One Test	One Test
Hydrostatic Shell test per 10.3 or 1.5 as applicable	One Test	Two Tests	Two Tests	Three Tests	Three Tests
Hydrostatic Seat test per 10.4 or 1.5 as applicable	One Test	Two Tests	N/R <sup>d</sup>	Three Tests	N/R <sup>d</sup>
Low Pressure Gas Seat test per 1.6.1, Type II	One Test	Two Tests	N/R	Three Tests	N/R
High Pressure Gas Shell test per 1.7.2	N/R	N/R	Two Tests	N/R	Three Tests
High Pressure Gas Seat test per 1.7.3	N/R	N/R	Two Tests	N/R	Three Tests

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

Low Pressure Gas Seat test per I.6.1. Type II	N/R One Test	N/R Two Test	Two Tests	N/R Three Tests	Three Tests
Torque or thrust test per I.8	N/R	All	All	All	All
Seat cavity relief test per I.9	1 valve per lot Off	All	All	All	All
<p>FOOTNOTES</p> <p>a. For all QSL3, QSL3G, QSL4 and QSL4G shell tests, after each test the pressure shall be reduced to zero.</p> <p>b. For all QSL3, QSL3G, QSL4 and QSL4G seat tests, after each test the pressure shall be reduced to zero and for actuated valves, the valve closure member shall be moved off the seat and returned cycled fully open to fully closed.</p> <p>c. For all QSL4 and QSL4G tests, the second pressure test shall have an extended duration of four times (4x).</p> <p>d. As per manufacturer's requirement a hydrostatic seat test per 10.4 may be performed.</p> <p>e. One lot refers to valves of the same purchase order and design, manufactured in the same manufacturing location.</p> <p>N/R-indicates "Not Required"</p>					

## I.5 Hydrostatic Testing

By agreement, hydrostatic testing shall be performed at pressures higher than specified in 10.3 and 10.4 and/or for periods longer than specified in Table 9, and Table 10 as specified by the purchaser. Hydrostatic test fluid shall conform to 10.1.2.

By agreement, hydrostatic testing shall be performed at a pressure higher than that specified in 10.3 or 10.4. If stipulated by the purchaser, hydrostatic testing shall be performed for a specified period longer than that required by Table 9 or Table 10.

## I.6 Low-pressure Gas Seat Testing

### ~~I.6.1 Low Pressure Gas Seat Testing Type II~~

The seat shall be tested as specified in 10.4 at a test pressure between 80 psi and 100 psi (5.5 bar and 6.9 bar) using air or nitrogen as the test medium. The valve shall be drained of hydrostatic test fluid and the inner parts shall be fully purged with air prior to the start of the low-pressure gas testing. Pressure shall be identified as stabilized when the rate of change is no more than 5% of the test pressure within 5 minutes.

### ~~I.6.2 Acceptance Criteria~~

The acceptable leakage rate for low-pressure gas seat testing shall be:

- ISO 5208, Rate A (no visible leakage), for soft-seated valves and lubricated-plug valves;
- ISO 5208, 2 times Rate C, for metal-seated valves, except metal seated check valves.
- ISO 5208, Rate E, for metal-seated check valves.

## I.7 High-pressure Gas Testing

### ~~I.7.1 Valve Preparation for Testing~~

The valve shall be drained of hydrostatic test fluid and the inner parts shall be fully purged with air prior to the start of the high-pressure gas testing.

## **~~I.7.2—High-pressure Gas Shell Test~~**

### **I.7.2.1 Method**

**Warning—High-pressure gas testing involves potential hazards. Appropriate safety precautions must be taken.**

All gas shell tests specified shall be performed with the valve unseated and partially open and may be performed with the valve fully open, provided the body cavity is simultaneously filled and pressurized through a cavity connection. Test methods used shall be one of the following:

- Method 1: Valves shall have a high-pressure gas shell test performed using nitrogen with valve submerged in a water bath during testing or,
- Method 2: Valves shall have a high-pressure gas shell test performed using nitrogen with a 1-3 % helium tracer measured using a mass spectrometer.

**NOTE** By agreement, when the appropriate safety precautions are taken, the high-pressure gas shell test may be performed in a test cell and not submerged in a water bath.

The minimum test pressure shall be 1.1 times the pressure rating determined in conformance with 4.3 for the material at 100 °F (38 °C).

The test duration shall conform to Table I.5.

**Table I.5—Minimum Duration of Gas Shell Tests**

Valve Size		Test Duration minutes
NPS	DN	
≤ 18	≤ 450	15
20 and larger	500 and larger	30

### **~~I.7.1.2~~ I.7.2.2 Acceptance Criteria**

Acceptance criteria shall satisfy one of the following:

- Method 1: When the valve is tested by submerged method, no visible leakage shall be permitted, or
- Method 2: When using a mass spectrometer, measurements shall not be higher than the background reading. no visible leakage shall be permitted through any pressure-containing part.

## **~~I.7.3—High-pressure Gas Seat Test~~**

### **I.7.3.1 Method**

Valves shall have a high-pressure gas seat test performed using inert gas (such as nitrogen, helium, etc.) as the test medium. The minimum test pressure shall be 1.1 times the pressure rating determined in conformance with 4.3 for the material at 100 °F (38 °C).



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

The test duration shall conform to Table 10.9.

### **I.7.3.2 Acceptance Criteria**

Leakage for soft-seated valves and lubricated plug valves shall not exceed ISO 5208; Rate A (no visible leakage).

For metal-seated valves, except check valves, the leakage rate shall not be more than two times ISO 5208, Rate C.

For metal-seated check valves, the leakage rate shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate E.

## **I.8 Torque/Thrust Functional Testing**

### **I.8.1 Method**

The maximum torque or thrust required to operate axial, ball, gate or plug valves shall be measured at the pressure specified by the purchaser for the following valve operations:

- a) Open-to-closed with the bore pressurized and the cavity at atmospheric pressure, **when applicable to the valve design for valves with upstream seat.**
- b) **Closed-to-open with both sides of the closure member pressurized and the cavity at atmospheric pressure, for valves with upstream seat.**
- c) Closed-to-open with one side of the closure member pressurized and the cavity at atmospheric pressure **for upstream seated valves and cavity at upstream pressure for valves with downstream seat.**
- d) as in Item c) but with the other side of the closure member pressurized.
- e) **Closed to open and open to closed without pressure.**

Torque or thrust values shall be measured with seats free of sealant except where the sealant is the primary means of sealing. **If required for assembly, A lubricant with a viscosity not exceeding that the range of SAE 10W motor oil or equivalent may only be used during assembly. (See 9.6)**

Thrust and torque testing shall be performed following high-pressure hydrostatic seat testing and, if specified, prior to any low-pressure gas seat testing.

### **I.8.2 Measuring Device Calibration**

Calibration of torque/thrust-measuring devices shall be as follows:

- Torque/thrust measuring devices shall be accurate to within  $\pm 2.0$  % of the full scale
- **Torque/thrust measurements shall be made at between 20 % and 80 % of the full range of the measuring device**
- Torque /thrust measuring devices shall be calibrated with a master device to at least three equidistant points of full scale (excluding zero and full scale as required points of calibration)

### **I.8.3 Acceptance Criteria**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

The measured torque or thrust results shall be recorded and shall not exceed the manufacturer's documented breakaway torque/thrust.

## **I.9 Cavity Relief Testing**

### **I.9.1 General**

A cavity relief test shall be performed if the valve has one or more self-relieving seats or a relief system that connects the valve cavity to one side of the valve. The procedure used for the cavity relief test shall be documented.

~~If the valve has one or more self-relieving seats or a relief system that connects the valve cavity to one side of the valve, the test shall conform to a documented procedure, by agreement.~~

~~Each valve shall be tested except valves that cannot trap pressure in the cavity. Cavity relief testing shall be performed on all valves except for those valves designed to not trap pressure in the cavity.~~

~~For valves where cavity overpressure relief is provided via one or more self-relieving seats, this shall be demonstrated by one of the cavity relief tests in I.9.2 or I.9.3.~~

For valves with cavity relief functionality, it shall be tested by one of the methods specified in I.9.2.1, I.9.2.2, I.9.2.3, I.9.3, I.9.4.1 or I.9.4.2.

~~For trunnion-mounted ball valves with self-relieving seats, selection of one of the three procedures of in I.9.2 shall be by agreement.~~

### **I.9.2 Trunnion-mounted Ball Valves**

#### **I.9.2.1 Procedure 1—Internal Relieving Seats**

The procedure for cavity-relief testing of trunnion-mounted ball valves with internal-relieving seats shall be as follows:

- a) Fill the valve in the half-open position with hydrostatic test fluid and purge trapped air
- b) Close the valve
- c) Close the branch vents
- d) Apply pressure to the valve cavity until one branch pressure starts to rise and the seat relieves the cavity pressure into the valve end; record this relief pressure and port location.

For valve types with two self-relieving seats, continue to increase the pressure to the cavity until the second branch pressure starts to rise and the second seat relieves; record the relief pressure of the second seat.

Valve shall relieve at a differential pressure no greater than 33% of the valve pressure rating.

~~Failure to relieve at differential pressure less than 33 % of the valve pressure rating shall be cause for rejection.~~

EXAMPLE 1 Class 150, 275 psi (19.0 bar), the maximum differential rated pressure-relief pressure is 90 psi (6.2 bar).

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

EXAMPLE 2 Class 2500, 6250 psi (430.9 bar), the maximum differential rated pressure-relief pressure is 2060 psi (142.1 bar).

~~Failure to relieve pressure shall be cause for rejection.~~

Pressure-temperature ratings for class-rated valves shall conform to the applicable rating table for the appropriate material group in ASME B16.34 or per MSS SP-44 when applicable for material not listed in ASME B16.34.

### I.9.2.2 Optional Procedure 2—One or More Self-relieving Seats

The procedure for cavity-relief testing of trunnion-mounted ball valves with one or more self-relieving seats shall be conducted using the following.

- a) Fill the valve in the half-open position with hydrostatic test fluid.
- b) Close the valve.
- c) Pressurize both sides of the valve and the valve cavity simultaneously, up to 1.0 times rated working pressure (RWP).
- d) Isolate both sides of the valve and the valve cavity from pressure source.
- e) Slowly decrease pressure on one side while monitoring the valve cavity pressure. Record pressure on that side required to activate SPE seat seal relief (point at which valve cavity pressure decreases).
- f) Repeat Steps a) to d) for the other side if it has a self-relieving seat.

~~Failure to relieve at a differential pressure less than 33% the valve pressure rating over the valve pressure rating shall be cause for rejection.~~

Valve shall relieve at a differential pressure no greater than 33% of the valve pressure rating.

Pressure-temperature ratings for class-rated valves shall conform to the applicable rating table for the appropriate material group in ASME B16.34 per MSS SP-44 when applicable for material not listed in ASME B16.34.

### I.9.2.3 Procedure 3—Relief System Connecting Valve Cavity to One Valve Side

The procedure for cavity-relief testing of trunnion-mounted ball valves with a relief system that connects the valve cavity to one side of the valve shall be as follows:

- a) Fill the valve in the half-open position with hydrostatic test fluid and purge trapped air
- b) Close the valve
- c) Close the branch vents
- d) Apply pressure to the valve cavity until one branch pressure starts to rise; record this relief pressure and port location

~~Failure to relieve at differential pressure less than 33 % of the valve pressure rating shall be cause for rejection.~~

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Valve shall relieve at a differential pressure no greater than 33% of the valve pressure rating.

EXAMPLE 1 Class 150, 275 psi (19.0 bar), the maximum differential rated pressure-relief pressure is 90 psi (6.2 bar).

EXAMPLE 2 Class 2500, 6250 psi (430.9 bar), the maximum differential rated pressure-relief pressure is 2060 psi (142.1 bar).

### **~~I.9.3 Through-conduit Slab Gate Valves with Self-relieving Seats~~**

Slab gate valves with one or more self-relieving seats that are upstream and/or downstream shall internally relieve the excess cavity pressure.

The procedure for cavity-relief testing of through-conduit slab gate valves with internal-relieving seats shall be as follows:

- a) Fill the valve in the half-open position with hydrostatic test fluid and purge any trapped air
- b) Close the valve (see NOTE 1)

NOTE 1 For through-conduit gate valves with rising stem hydrostatic test fluid volume may need to be adjusted during the closing stroke.

- c) Close both branch vents
- d) Apply design pressure MAWP (or other pressure agreed with the purchaser) via one of the valve branches with the opposite branch vented to atmosphere
- e) Apply pressure to the valve cavity until the pressure in the pressurized branch starts to rise and the seat relieves the cavity pressure into the valve end; record this relief pressure
- f) Failure to relieve at differential pressure less than 33% of the valve pressure rating over the valve pressure rating shall be cause for rejection

NOTE 2 For downstream sealing through-conduit gate valves, a center cavity pressure port is required.

### **~~I.9.4 Floating Ball Valves~~**

#### **I.9.4.1 Procedure 1**

NOTE This procedure requires a test port in the valve body to have access to body cavity.

The test should be performed with a hydrostatic test fluid

The procedure shall be as follows:

- a) Fill the valve in the half-open position with hydrostatic test fluid and purge trapped air
- b) Close the valve

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

- c) Apply pressure to the valve cavity until one branch pressure starts to release and the seat relieves the cavity pressure into the valve end; record this relief pressure and port location

Acceptance criteria shall be that the valve shall relieve at differential pressure less than 33 % of the valve pressure rating.

#### I.9.4.2 Procedure 2

NOTE This procedure does not require a test port in the valve body.

The test shall be performed with nitrogen

The procedure shall be as follows:

- a) With the valve in half-open position, pressurize the valve to the valve pressure rating plus the maximum theoretical cavity relief pressure
- b) Isolate the valve from the pressure source
- c) Close the ball
- d) Vent each end to atmospheric pressure
- e) Isolate each end of the valve of the atmospheric pressure
- f) Open the valve to the half-open position for the release of trapped pressure in the body cavity
- g) Monitor the release pressure into the valve bore (only one pressure gauge can be used and installed)

Acceptance criteria shall be as follows:

— Acceptance criteria of the release pressure shall be defined and calculated considering variation of initial pressure at volume of the valve body cavity (closed position) and final pressure at volume (volume of whole valve body + volume of the isolated test rig portion).

— Monitored release pressure above the calculated criteria shall be cause for rejection.

#### I.10 Documentation

The manufacturer shall maintain documentation as specified in Table I.6 for equipment that satisfies QSL2, QSL3/3G, and QSL4/4G.

**Table I.6—Documentation Requirements for Each QSL**

Item	Documentation	QSL2	QSL3/3G	QSL4/4G
1	Certificate of conformance to this Annex and QSL	X	X	X
2	Pressure test report (including pressure, test duration, test medium, and acceptance criteria) including copy of chart recorder used on pressure test	X	X	X
3	Calibration certificates on pressure test equipment used (e.g. pressure gauges, transducers, and chart recorders)	N/R	X	X
4	Heat-treatment records on all pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts including times and temperatures, e.g. charts	N/R	X	X

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

5	Material test reports on all pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts	X	X	X
6	For sour service valves, certificate of conformance to NACE MR0175/ISO 15156	X	X	X
7	General arrangements drawings	X	X	X
8	NDE records	N/R	X	X
9	Cross-sectional assembly drawings with parts list and materials list including design code for pressure-containing parts and pressure boundary bolting	X	X	X
10	Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions/manuals	X	X	X
FOOTNOTES X- Indicates required documentation to be maintained by the manufacturer N/R-indicates not required				

## **Annex J**

**(normative)**

### **Requirements for Extended Hydrostatic Shell Test Duration and Records Retention for Valves in Jurisdictional Pipeline Systems**

#### **J.1 General**

This annex specifies the requirements for extended hydrostatic shell testing that shall be performed by the manufacturer if specified by the purchaser. This annex also specifies the test records to be provided to the purchaser and record retention requirements.

This annex specifies additional requirements, which shall be performed by the manufacturer if specified by the purchaser at time of order placement.

#### **J.2 Hydrostatic Shell Testing Requirements**

##### **~~J.2.1 General~~**

The hydrostatic shell test shall conform to 10.3 with test duration of at least four (4) hours.

##### **~~J.2.2 Test Record Requirements~~**

Test records shall contain the following as a minimum and be provided to the purchaser.

- a) The name of the manufacturer, name of the organization that performs testing (if other than the valve manufacturer), the identification of the individual responsible for performing the test, date, time, and location of test.
- b) Serial number, size, class, and end connector.
- c) Test medium (fluid) used.
- d) The beginning, ending, and actual test pressure and temperature readings, unless otherwise agreed.
- e) The test duration.
- f) A chart recording or digital record of the pressure showing the raise from zero to pressure at the beginning of the test and return to zero at the end.
- g) Any significant variations in pressure or temperature for the specific test.
- h) Any leaks or failures and their disposition.
- i) Certificates of calibration for all instrumentations used in the test, such as pressure transducers, pressure gauges, temperature devices, and chart recorders.

##### **~~J.2.3 Minimum Requirements for Pressure Transducers, Pressure Gauges,~~**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

### **~~Temperature Devices, and Chart Recorders~~**

Calibration of pressure transducers, pressure gauges, temperature devices, and chart recorders shall conform to 9.1, but at an interval not greater than 12 months.

### **~~J.2.4 Record Retention Requirement~~**

Test records in J.2.2 shall be provided to the purchaser and maintained by the manufacturer in conformance with Section 14.



## Annex K

(normative)

### Purchaser-specified Customization—Permissible Deviations to Specified Design and Manufacturing Requirements

#### K.1 General

This annex identifies permissible deviations to specified design and manufacturing requirements allowing for customized valves conforming to this document, when specified by the purchaser at time of order placement.

#### K.2 Intermediate Pressures and Temperature Ratings

When intermediate pressures and temperature rating that do not conform to 4.3.1 are required, the pressure-temperature rating may be determined using an internationally recognized design standard as per 5.1.

~~The purchaser shall specify intermediate pressures and temperature rating that do not conform to 4.3.1. The pressure-temperature rating shall be determined by linear interpolation in conformance with ASME B16.34. Valves with ASME flanged ends shall not be designed to an intermediate rating due to the risk of the valve being transferred to a different application, which may use the full flange rating.~~

When the purchaser specifies an intermediate rated class, the valve shall be marked with the agreed intermediate rated class on the body and nameplate (see Table 11 and Table 13).

Valves with an intermediate pressure-temperature rating shall have a bore size by agreement.

**NOTE** Conformance to Table 1 is not required.

Nameplate shall be marked with the agreed bore size.

#### K.3 Valve Bore

##### ~~K.3.1 Nominal Size~~

~~The purchaser may specify the valve bore size if not identified in Table 1 (see 4.4).~~

##### ~~K.3.2 Non-standard Opening and Reduced-opening Valves~~

~~The purchaser may shall specify non-standard opening or reduced-opening valves sizes less than NPS 4 (DN 100) or greater than NPS 24 (DN 600), which do not conform to 4.5.1 or 4.5.2.~~

#### K.4 Design Codes

~~The purchaser shall specify when a specific design codes or standards at their option to be used.~~

~~The purchaser may shall specify when a specific design code or standard shall be used (see 5.1.1).~~

#### K.5 Non-standard Face-to face and End-to-end Dimensions

The purchaser may shall specify, in conformance with 5.2.2, face-to-face and end-to-end dimensions that are not shown or do not conform to 5.2.1.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

## K.6 End Connectors

The purchaser ~~may shall~~ specify end connectors that do not conform to 5.2.3.1.1.

The purchaser ~~may shall~~ specify weld-end connectors that do not conform to 5.2.3.2.

The purchase ~~may shall~~ specify any other ~~weld-end~~ connector that does not conform to 5.2.3

EXAMPLE        Clamp, compact flange, hub, swivel, special weld-ends, etc.

## K.7 Other Drain Connectors

The purchaser ~~may shall~~ specify other sizes ~~or types of drain connectors, such as welded, seal welded, or flanged in~~ accordance with 5.6.1.

Plugs, fittings and blinds shall have a MAWP not less than the valve rated pressure and shall be capable of withstanding the valve hydrostatic shell test pressure (150 % of valve rated pressure).

Flange connections shall be supplied complete with a blind flange, gasket and bolting installed and pressure tested.

Flange, gasket and bolting connection pressure-temperature rating shall be the same as for the valve.

For studed flange connection, the thread depth in the valve body shall be a minimum of one stud diameter.

For flange connections, engagement of the threaded part shall comply with recognized industry code or standard requirements.

Gaskets shall meet the requirements of ASME B16.20.

## K.8 Lifting

The purchaser ~~may shall~~ specify any design, manufacturing and/or certification requirements for lifting points that do not conform to 5.9.

The purchaser ~~may shall~~ specify when lifting points on the valve are not required per 5.9

The purchaser shall specify when valves shall be marked to indicate the SWL of each lifting point.

## K.9 Design Validation

The purchaser ~~may shall~~ specify when design validation as specified in 5.10.3 shall conform to Annex F.

## K.10 Material Specification

The purchaser shall specify the use of other pressure-containing and pressure-controlling materials that do not conform to manufacturer's written material specification per 6.1.

## K.11 Chemical Composition

The purchaser ~~may shall~~ specify the chemical composition of pressure-containing and pressure-controlling materials that do not conform to 6.3.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

#### **K.12 Weld Repair of Forgings and Plate Material**

The purchaser ~~may~~ ~~shall~~ specify when weld repair of forgings and plates is acceptable to correct material defects, in conformance with 7.11.3.

#### **K.13 ~~Other~~ Pressure Boundary Bolting—Hardness Testing**

The purchaser ~~may~~ ~~shall~~ specify the acceptable hardness limits for pressure boundary bolting that do not conform to 8.1.

#### **K.14 Alternative Seat Test**

The purchaser ~~may~~ ~~shall~~ specify performing a high-pressure gas seat test conforming to I.7.3 as an alternative to the hydrostatic seat test of 10.4.

#### **K.XX Flange Bolting for Studded-Outlet End Connectors**

Purchaser may specify when bolting for studded-outlet end connectors are required to be metric dimensions.

## Annex L

(normative)

### Purchaser-specified Customization—Supplemental Options to Specified Design and Manufacturing Requirements

#### L.1 General

This annex specifies supplemental requirements, which shall be performed by the manufacturer when specified by the purchaser at time of order placement.

#### L.2 Valve Operational Data

The purchaser shall specify the maximum pressure differential (MPD) when available, at which the valve is required to be opened. ~~If unavailable, the pressure as determined in conformance with 4.3 for material at 100 °F (38 °C) shall be the MPD.~~

The manufacturer shall provide the following data to the purchaser, when requested:

- a) flow coefficient  $C_v$  or  $K_v$ ;

NOTE  $K_v$  is related to the flow coefficient  $C_v$ , expressed in USC units of U.S. gallons per minute at 60 °F (15.6 °C) resulting in a 1 psi pressure drop as given by Equation (2) (4):

$$K_v = C_v / 1.156 \quad (2)$$

~~(4)~~

- b) Valve top works dimensions (as applicable);
- c) Break-to-open torque or thrust (BTO);
- d) Break-to-close torque or thrust (BTC);
- e) Valve breakaway angle or breakaway percent of stroke;
- f) Run-to-open torque or thrust (RTO);
- g) Run-to-close (reseat) torque or thrust (RTC);
- h) End-to-open torque or thrust (ETO);
- i) End-to-close (reseat) torque or thrust (ETC);
- j) Valve drive train MAST
- k) Length and direction of stroke to open and close for linear valves
- l) Angle and direction of rotation for part-turn or check valves
- m) Direction of rotation and number of turns for multi-turn valves

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

- n) Thrust necessary to enable valve to maintain position, when applicable
- o) Any other specific torque or thrust conditions of the valve
- p) Number of cycles expected during the service life of the equipment (end-user provided)

NOTE The breakaway angle or percent of stroke can be significant to actuator sizing when more than 5° or 5 %, respectively.

- q) Number of turns for manually operated valves.

Corrosion protection measures for long-term storage or unusual/harsh conditions shall be provided if specified by the purchaser.

### **~~L.3 Reduced-opening Valves with Circular Opening~~**

~~The purchaser shall specify reduced-opening valves sizes less than NPS 4 (DN 100) or greater than NPS 24 (DN 600).~~

### **~~L.3 Single Piece Stem~~**

~~The purchaser shall specify that the stem be constructed from one piece of wrought material.~~

~~Welded fabrication or threaded stem assemblies shall not be permitted.~~

### **~~L.4 Extended Stem and Shaft Assemblies for Below Ground Service~~**

The purchaser shall specify when the valve shall be provided with an extended stem. Extended stems and shafts assemblies ~~in below grade (ground level)~~ service shall conform to 5.3 and 5.4.5. Extended stems and shafts assemblies shall be protected by an extension casing (housing).

~~The purchaser shall specify when the stem extension shall be permanently attached to the valve.~~

### **L.5 Drive Train Strength Test**

The purchaser shall specify when the drive train strength test for **axial**, ball, gate or plug valves shall be measured. The test torque shall be the greater of:

- two (2) times the manufacturers predicted breakaway torque/thrust; or
- two (2) times the measured breakaway torque/thrust.

The test torque shall be applied with closure member blocked for a minimum time of 1 minute.

NOTE For gate valves, the thrust can be tensile or compressive, whichever is the most stringent condition.

The test shall not cause any permanent visible deformation of the drive train.

For ball and plug valves, the total torsional deflection of the extended drive train when delivering the design torque shall not exceed the overlap contact angle between the seat and closure member.

### **L.6 Drain, Vent, ~~Sealant~~ Injection Lines**

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

The purchaser shall specify the provision of drain, vent, or sealant injection lines to be installed on the valve. When provided, drain, vent, and sealant injection lines shall be composed of rigid pipework. For valve with extended stems, the lines shall be fastened to the valve and/ or extensions.

When provided, drain and vent lines shall:

- have a design pressure MAWP not less than the rated pressure of the valve on which they are installed.
- be capable of withstanding the hydrostatic shell test pressure of the valve.
- be designed in conformance with a recognized design code.
- be suitable for blow-down operation, where applicable.

When provided, sealant injection lines shall be rated to the same criteria as sealant injection fittings in 5.6

The manufacturer shall recommend the maximum injection pressure for the system.

The size of the injection lines and the termination location for all lines shall be by agreement.

## L.7 Drain, Vent, and Sealant Injection Valves

The purchaser shall specify the provision of drain, vent, or sealant injection valves to be installed on the valve. When provided, the drain and block valves shall have a rated pressure not less than the valve on which they are installed and be suitable for blow-down operation. Block and check non-return valves fitted to sealant injection lines shall be rated for the greater of the piping valve rated pressure and the injection pressure defined in 5.6.

## L.8 Antistatic Testing

The electrical resistance shall be tested with a power source not exceeding 12 V to have continuity between the parts listed in 5.8 when tested on a dry valve before pressure testing.

~~The purchaser shall specify when the electrical resistance between the closure member and the valve body/bonnet and between the stem/shaft and the valve, body/bonnet shall not exceed 12 V when measured using a direct-current power source. The resistance shall be measured on dry valves before pressure testing and shall not exceed 10  $\Omega$  in conformance with 5.8.~~

## L.9 Welding Overlay Iron Dilution

The purchaser shall specify when an iron dilution Class Fe 5 (iron mass fraction 5.0 % maximum) shall be used as part of the CRA weld overlay with nickel-based alloy UNS N06625 as an alternative to 7.5.3.1.

## L.10 Corrosion Resistant Metallic Surfaces

The purchaser shall specify when corrosion resistant metallic surfaces are required on lip seal or V-packing sealing surfaces.

## L.11 Supplemental Hardness Testing—Production Parts for Sour Service

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

The purchaser shall specify when a production material hardness test on all metallic pressure-containing and pressure-controlling parts for sour service **is required**. The maximum hardness shall be as per NACE MR0175/ISO 15156 requirements.

The method of hardness testing shall be performed in accordance with the following:

- For **HBW Brinell** hardness measurements, testing shall be performed in accordance with ASTM E10 or ISO 6506-1.
- For **HRC Rockwell** hardness measurements, testing shall be performed in accordance with ASTM E18 or ISO 6508-1.
- Portable hardness measurements shall be performed in accordance with ASTM E110.

Hardness testing shall not be performed on finished machined parts sealing surfaces.

Results of the production hardness testing shall be reported, and records maintained (see Section 14.1).

NOTE This hardness test may be performed by the supplier on the material provided and reported on the material test report.

## **L.12 Sour Service for Bolting**

The purchaser shall specify when the use of bolting for buried or insulated application shall conform to NACE MR0175/ISO 15156 per 6.5.

## **L.13 Use of Assembly Lubricant**

In conformance with 9.6, purchaser shall specify when no lubricant shall be used on valves during assembly.

## **L.14 ~~Supplemental Testing~~ Double Block and Bleed (DBB) Valves**

The purchaser shall specify when double block and bleed (DBB) valves shall undergo additional testing. The testing shall be performed as follows:

- With the valve unseated and partially open, the valve and its cavity shall be filled with test fluid.
- The valve shall then be closed, and the valve body vent valve opened to allow excess test fluid to overflow from the valve-cavity test connection.
- The test pressure shall be applied simultaneously from both valve ends.
- Seat tightness shall be monitored via overflow through the valve cavity connection.
- Acceptance criteria shall be per the requirements of 10.4.3, except the metal-to-metal seat test, leakage rate shall not be more than two times ISO 5208, Rate C.

## **L.15 ~~Supplemental Testing~~ Double Isolation and Bleed DIB-1 (Both Seats Bidirectional)**

The purchaser shall specify when each seat in a double isolation and bleed (DIB-1) valve shall be tested in both directions. The testing shall be performed as follows:

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

- Cavity-relief valves shall be removed, if fitted.
- The valve and cavity shall be filled with test fluid, with the valve unseated and partially open, until the test fluid overflows through the cavity relief connectors.
- To test for seat leakage in the direction of the cavity, the valve shall be closed.
- The test pressure shall be applied successively to each valve end to test each seat separately from the upstream side. Leakage shall be monitored via the valve cavity pressure relief connectors.
- Thereafter, each seat shall be tested as a downstream seat. Both ends of the valve shall have the ends open to atmosphere and the valve cavity filled with test fluid.
- Pressure shall then be applied whilst monitoring leakage through each seat at both ends of the valve.

NOTE Some valve types can require the balancing of the upstream and valve cavity pressure during the downstream seat test in which case only one end of the valve shall be open to atmosphere.

- Acceptance criteria shall be per the requirements of 10.4.3, except the metal-to-metal seat test, leakage rate shall not be more than two times ISO 5208, Rate C.

#### **L.16 Supplemental Testing—Double Isolation and Bleed DIB-2 (One Unidirectional and One Bidirectional Seat)**

The purchaser shall specify when the bidirectional seat in a double isolation and bleed (DIB-2) valve shall be tested in both directions. The testing shall be performed as follows:

- Cavity-relief valves shall be removed if fitted.
- The valve and cavity shall be filled with test fluid, with the valve unseated and partially half-open, until the test fluid overflows through the cavity relief connectors.
- To test for seat leakage in the direction of the cavity, the valve shall be closed.
- The test pressure shall be applied successively to each valve end to test each seat separately from the upstream side. Leakage shall be monitored via the valve cavity pressure relief connectors.
- To test the bidirectional seat from the cavity test, pressure shall be applied simultaneously to the valve cavity and upstream end. Monitor leakage at the downstream end of the valve.
- Acceptance criteria shall be per the requirements of 10.4.3, except the metal-to-metal seat test, leakage rate shall not be more than two times ISO 5208, Rate C.

#### **L.17 Supplemental FAT Low Pressure Gas Seat Testing**

##### **L.17.1 Pressure Testing Valves with Hydrostatic End Load**

The purchaser shall specify when valves shall be pressure tested with connectors that subject the valve to hydrostatic end load to the requirements of 10.2, 10.3 and 10.4.



This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

NOTE Visible marks left on the sealing area by the test gasket are acceptable, provided the sealing integrity has been demonstrated.

### **L.17.2 Low Pressure Gas Seat Testing-Type I (10)**

#### **L.17.2.1 Method**

The purchaser shall specify when valve shall be seat tested. A Type I test shall be the seat test specified in 10.4 repeated at a test pressure between 5 psi and 14.5 psi (0.34 barg and 1 bar) using air or nitrogen as the test medium.

The closure member and leakage measurement connection port shall be purged with air with valve half open.

Following pressurization and prior to commencing seat leakage measurement, the valve shall be fully stabilized. The valve stabilization period shall not begin until the test pressure in the valve remains constant for at least 2 min.

During the stabilization period, the outlet port from where leakage is to be measured shall remain connected to the leak detection device (e.g. flow meter or water-filled bubble counter vessel) and shall be monitored for the duration.

The stabilization period duration shall not be less than as specified in Table L.1. The duration can be extended in case stabilization is not achieved.

**Table L.1—Stabilization Period Duration**

Nominal Pipe Size	Duration (minutes)
4 (DN 100) and below	5
6 (DN 150) to 10 (DN 250)	10
12 (DN 300) to 18 (DN 450)	15
20 (DN 500) and above	15

Following stabilization, the seat leakage test shall begin.

#### **L.17.2.2 Acceptance Criteria**

The acceptable leakage rate for low-pressure gas seat testing shall be:

- ISO 5208, Rate A (no visible leakage), for soft-seated valves and lubricated-plug valves;
- ISO 5208, 2 times Rate C, for metal-seated valves, except metal seated check valves.
- ISO 5208, Rate E, for metal-seated check valves.

### **L.17.3 Low Pressure Gas Seat Testing-Type II (10)**

#### **L.17.3.1 Method**

The purchaser shall specify when valve shall be seat tested specified in 10.4 repeated at a test pressure between 80 psi and 100 psi (5.5 bar and 6.9 bar) using air or nitrogen as the test medium.

The valve shall be drained of hydrostatic test fluid and the inner parts shall be fully purged with air prior to the start of the low-pressure gas testing. Pressure shall be **considered identified as** stabilized when the rate of change is no more than 5% of the test pressure within 5 minutes.

#### **L.17.3.2 Acceptance Criteria**

The acceptable leakage rate for low-pressure gas seat testing shall be:

- ISO 5208, Rate A (no visible leakage), for soft-seated valves and lubricated-plug valves;
- ISO 5208, 2 times Rate C, for metal-seated valves, except metal seated check valves.
- ISO 5208, Rate E, for metal-seated check valves.

#### **~~L.18 Operations Testing—Valves Required Double Isolation and Bleed (DIB)~~**

The purchaser shall specify when valves required for double isolation and bleed (DIB) operations shall be tested. The testing shall be performed as follows:

- Test fluid shall be hydrostatic test fluid that conforms to 10.1.2 or nitrogen gas, as specified.
- The following steps shall be performed on each end or each side of the valve.

Step 1: With valve, partly open, fill valve with test medium and pressurize to valve **design pressure** **MAWP**.

Step 2: Close valve.

Step 3: Reduce pressure on downstream side of valve to zero and monitor cavity pressure.

Step 4: Monitor leakage between cavity and downstream side.

Step 5: Reduce pressure in cavity slowly, and monitor upstream pressure, and leakage to the downstream side.

Step 6: Reintroduce pressure into the cavity slowly up to 145 psi (10 bar) and monitor leakage to the downstream side.

Step 7: Reduce pressure in cavity slowly and monitor leakage to the downstream side.

Step 8: With cavity and downstream vented to zero, measure upstream seat performance by monitoring leakage at the cavity port.

Step 9: When applicable to the valve type, repeat Steps 1 through 8 on the opposite side of the valve.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

- Leakage for soft-seated valves shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate A; (no visible detectable leakage for the duration of the test at test pressure).
- For metal-seated valves, the leakage rate shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate C; however, for valves in gas service the leakage rate shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate D.

## L.19 High-pressure Gas Testing

### ~~L.19.1 General~~

The purchaser shall specify when high -pressure gas testing is required.

The valve shall be drained of hydrostatic test fluid and the inner parts shall be fully purged with air prior to the start of the high-pressure gas testing.

### ~~L.19.2 High-pressure Gas Shell Test~~

#### L.19.2.1 Method

**Warning—High-pressure gas testing involves potential hazards. Appropriate safety precautions must be taken.**

All gas shell tests specified shall be performed with the valve unseated and partially open and may be performed with the valve fully open, provided the body cavity is simultaneously filled and pressurized through a cavity connection. Test methods used shall be one of the following

- Method 1: Valves shall have a high-pressure gas shell test performed using nitrogen with valve submerged in a water bath during testing or,
- Method 2: Valves shall have a high-pressure gas shell test performed using nitrogen with a 1% ~~3%~~ helium tracer measured using a mass spectrometer.

NOTE By agreement, when the appropriate safety precautions are taken, the high-pressure gas shell test may be performed in a test cell and not submerged in a water bath.

The minimum test pressure shall be 1.1 times the pressure rating determined in conformance with 4.3 for the material at 100 °F (38 °C).

The test duration shall conform to Table L.2.

**Table L.2—Minimum Duration of Gas Shell Tests**

Valve Size		Test Duration minutes
NPS	DN	
≤ 18	≤ 450	15
20 and larger	500 and larger	30

#### L.19.2.2 Acceptance Criteria

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Acceptance criteria shall satisfy one of the following:

- Method 1: When the valve is tested by submerged method, no visible leakage shall be permitted, or
- Method 2: When using a mass spectrometer a maximum of 0.27 cc/min of nitrogen + helium from each mechanical joint. ~~no visible leakage shall be permitted through any pressure-containing part.~~

### **L.19.3 High-pressure Gas Seat Test**

#### **L.19.3.1 Method**

Valves shall have a high-pressure gas seat test performed using inert gas (such as nitrogen, helium, etc.) as the test medium. The minimum test pressure shall be 1.1 times the pressure rating determined in conformance with 4.2 4.3 for the material at 100 °F (38 °C).

The test duration shall conform to Table 10 9.

#### **L.19.3.2 Acceptance Criteria**

Leakage for soft-seated valves and lubricated plug valves shall not exceed ISO 5208; Rate A (no visible leakage).

For metal-seated valves, except check valves, the leakage rate shall not be more than two times ISO 5208, Rate C.

For metal-seated check valves, the leakage rate shall not exceed ISO 5208, Rate E.

### **L.20 External Coating or Painting of Corrosion-resistant Valves**

The purchaser shall specify when corrosion-resistant valves shall have an external coating or paint system applied.

### **L.21 Valve Orientation**

#### **L.21.1 Operating Orientation**

~~The purchaser shall specify the required operating orientation of the valve when a specific orientation is required for proper operation of the valve in its intended service.~~ For proper operation of the valve in its intended service, the purchaser shall specify the required operating orientation of the valve when a specific orientation is required. When the operating orientation has been specified, the manufacturer shall provide installation, operation, and maintenance instructions for the valve.

#### **L.21.2 Pressure Testing Orientation**

~~The purchaser shall specify the required orientation of the valve during pressure testing when a specific orientation is required for proper operation of the valve in its intended service.~~ For proper operation of the valve in its intended service, the purchaser shall specify the required operating orientation of the valve when a specific orientation is required. The number of valves in a given order that is subject to the required pressure test orientation shall be specified.

### **L.22 Disassembly/Maintenance Tools**

~~The purchaser shall specify when tools shall be supplied for valve designs requiring specialized tools for~~

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

disassembly or maintenance.

The manufacturer shall inform the purchaser when special (designed by the manufacturer) tools are required for disassembly or maintenance.

The purchaser shall specify when tools shall be supplied with the valves. The manufacturer shall provide installation, operation, and maintenance instructions for the valve.

The purchaser shall specify when such a tool shall be tested to demonstrate its functionality.

## L.23 Pressure Balance Hole

The purchaser shall specify when the closure member in ball or gate valves shall be provided with or without a pressure balance hole, see 14.2.1.

The design of the pressure balance hole shall have a ratio between the length of the hole and the hole diameter of less than 10 ( $L/D < 10$ ).

Pressure balance hole typical locations are shown in figures L.1 and L.2.

NOTE Pressure balance hole allows for smaller sized operator and injection of fluids to the main pipeline. Plugging of the hole in fouling service creates the risk of not be able to start or complete the valve stroke in case a small size operator is provided. The absence of a pressure balance hole allows the body cavity to be the vented/isolated from the main pipe in the open position and stem leakage or body leakage will have restricted outflow.

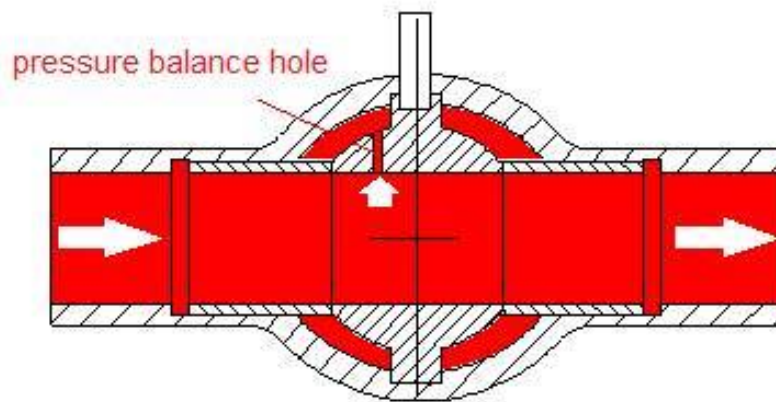


Figure L.1—Pressure Balance Hole for Ball Valve (to update sketch and provide sketch for gate valve)

## L.24 Fugitive Emissions

### L.24.1 Valve Qualification Testing

The purchaser shall specify when valves shall undergo fugitive emission qualification testing. If specified, qualification testing of valves shall be performed in conformance to a national or international standard such as,

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

- API 624 for rising stem valves; or,
- API 641 for quarter-turn valves; or,
- ISO 15848-1 for Industrial valves

NOTE Another methodology may be used to satisfy regulatory or contractual requirements

#### **L.24.2 Valve Production Testing**

The purchaser shall specify when valves shall be fugitive emissions production tested. If specified, production fugitive emission testing of valves shall conform to ISO 15848-2

NOTE Another methodology may be used to satisfy regulatory or contractual requirements

#### **L.25 Piggging**

The purchaser shall specify the requirements for piggability of the valves.

NOTE 1 Venturi or reduced-bore valves are not suitable for most piggging operations, including intelligent piggging, but can allow the passage of foam **PIGS pigs**.

NOTE 2 A valve in which the drive member or the closure member obstructs the bore in the otherwise fully open position (e.g. a dual- plate check valve) is not piggable.

NOTE 3 Certain full-opening valves with pockets can allow bypass of fluid around a short **PIG pig** or sphere.

#### **L.26 Locking Provision**

~~The purchaser shall specify when the valves are supplied with a provision for locking.~~ The purchaser shall specify when the valves are required with a provision for locking. When specified, the locking feature for check valves shall be designed to lock the valve in the open position only. Locking feature for other types of valves shall be designed to lock the valve in the open and/or closed position.

#### **L.27 Service Compatibility**

All metallic and nonmetallic parts exposed directly to the pipeline fluid and lubricants shall be compatible for the commissioning fluids and service when specified by the purchaser. Metallic **material parts materials pairs** shall be selected to have a galling threshold stress above the design compressive load.

Qualification testing of elastomers and thermoplastics shall be performed in accordance with one of the following.

- NORSOK M-710, or
- ISO 23936 Parts 1 and 2, or
- Purchaser-agreed specification

#### **L.28 Fire Testing**

The purchaser shall specify when valves shall be qualified by fire testing. If specified, fire tested valves shall be

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

qualified by testing that conforms to API 6FA or API 607 or ISO 10497. ~~Testing shall include ancillary valves when specified.~~ All ancillary components and valves (e.g. cavity relief) with soft gaskets or seals shall be qualified by fire testing either separately or included in valve qualification.

**NOTE** Tests to API STD 607 4th edition for soft seated valves up to Class 600 do not meet the current edition of API STD 607, since both the operational and external leakage tests were only required to be carried out at only 29 psig (2 bar) compared to 75 % of the rated pressure for other procedures.

## **L.29 Radiograph NDE of Pipe Pup Welds Weld End Connector**

~~The purchaser shall specify when radiographic testing on 100% of the weldment shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 2. Acceptance shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, UW-51 for linear indications and ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 4 for rounded indications.~~

The purchaser shall specify when weld end connector ~~welding ends~~ shall be subjected to surface and /or volumetric NDE.

Volumetric NDE examination of weld end connector ~~welding ends~~ shall be performed for a minimum length equal to 1.5 times the mating pipe wall thickness or 50 mm, whichever is greater using one of the following, as applicable:

- Radiographic testing on weld end connector ~~welding ends~~ of castings shall conform to ASME B16.34; Appendix I. Acceptance shall conform to ASME B16.34, Appendix I.
- Ultrasonic testing on weld end connector ~~welding ends~~ of castings shall conform to ASME B16.34; Appendix IV. Acceptance shall conform to ASME B16.34, Appendix IV.
- Ultrasonic testing on weld end connector ~~welding ends~~ of forgings and plate shall conform to ASME B16.34, Appendix IV. Acceptance shall conform to ASME B16.34, Appendix IV.

Surface NDE shall be performed on the machined ends of the valve-weld bevel using one of the following:

- Magnetic particle testing on weld bevels of weld ends after machining shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 7. Acceptance shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 6.
- Penetrant testing on weld bevels of weld ends after machining shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 6. Acceptance shall conform to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 8.

## **L.30 Pressure Testing Valves with Hydrostatic End Load**

The purchaser shall specify when valves shall be pressure tested with connectors that subject the valve to hydrostatic end load to the requirements of 10.2, 10.3 and 10.4.

**NOTE** Visible marks left on the sealing area by the test gasket are acceptable, provided the sealing integrity has been demonstrated.

## **L.31 External Loads**

The purchaser shall specify when the valve design needs to accommodate the effects of external loads. The purchaser shall define the external loads. The manufacturer shall demonstrate, by calculation or test, that under loads resulting from MAWP and any defined pipe or external loads, distortion of the valve does not impair functionality or sealing.

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

Example External loads can include piping, thermal, seismic, environmental.

Committee Draft - Do Not Distribute



## Bibliography

- [1] ASNT ACCP-CP-1, ASNT Central Certification Program  
*API Specification Q1, Specification for Quality Management System Requirements for Manufacturing Organizations for the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*
- [2] API Specification 6FD, *Specification for Fire Test for Check Valves*
- [ ] API Specification 17D,
- [3] API Standard 20D, *Qualification of Nondestructive Examination Services for Equipment Used in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*
- [4] API Standard 20G, *Qualification of Suppliers of Welding Services for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*
- [5] API Standard 20H, *Heat Treatment Services-Batch Type for Equipment Used in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*
- [6] API Standard 20J, *Qualification of Distributors of Metallic Materials for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*
- [7] API Standard 20L, *Qualification of Polymeric Seal Manufacturers for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*
- [8] API Standard 20M, *Qualification of Suppliers of Machining Services for Use in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*
- [9] API Standard 20N, *Heat Treatment Services –Continuous Line for Equipment Used in the Petroleum and Natural Gas Industry*
- [10] API Standard 600, *Steel Gate Valves—Flanged and Butt-welding Ends, Bolted Bonnets*  
API Standard 624, *Type Testing of Rising Stem Valves Equipped with Graphite Packing for Fugitive Emissions*  
API Standard 641, *Type Testing of Quarter-turn Valves for Fugitive Emissions*
- [11] API 21TR1, *Selection for Bolting Materials*
- [12] ASTM E8, *Standard Test Methods for Tension Testing of Metallic Materials*
- [13] ASTM E29, *Standard Practice for Using Significant Digits in Test Data to Determine Conformance with Specifications*

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---

[14] ASTM A577, *Standard Specification for Ultrasonic Angle-Beam Examination of Steel Plates*

[x] ASME B31.3, *Process Piping*

[15] ASME BTH-1, *Design of Below –the-Hook Lifting Devices*

[16] AWS QC1, *Standard for AWS Certification of Welding Inspectors*

[17] EN 12516-1, *Industrial valves—Shell design strength—Part 1: Tabulation method for steel valve shells*

[18] EN 12516-2, *Industrial valves—Shell design strength—Part 2: Calculation method for steel valve shells*

[19] EN 13445-3, *Unfired pressure vessels – Part 1: General*

EN 13445-3, *Unfired pressure vessels—Part 3: Design*

[20] ISO 5210, *Industrial valves - Multi-turn valve actuator attachments*

[21] ISO 5211, *Industrial valves—Part-turn actuator attachments*

[22] ISO 6892-1, *Metallic materials—Tensile testing—Part 1: Method of test at room temperature*

[23] ISO 9001, *Quality management systems—Requirements*

[24] ISO 80000-1:2009, *Quantities and units—General principles*

[25] MSS SP61, *Pressure Testing of Valves*

[26] MSS SP101, *Part-Turn Valve Actuator Attachment - Flange and Driving Component Dimensions and Performance Characteristics*

[27] MSS SP102, *Multi-Turn Valve Actuator Attachment - Flange and Driving Component Dimensions and Performance Characteristics*

This document is not an API standard; it is under consideration within an API technical subcommittee but has not received all approval required to become an API publication. It shall not be reproduced or circulated or quoted, in whole or in part, outside of API subcommittee activities except with the approval of the chairman of the subcommittee have jurisdiction and API standards department staff. copyright © API. All rights reserved

---



AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE

200 Massachusetts Avenue, NW

Washington, DC 20001

USA

202-682-8000

170